

ROGERS (Major Robert) Journals of, containing an account of the several excursions he made under the Generals who commanded upon the Continent of North America during the late war. From which may be collected the most material circumstances of every campaign upon that Continent from the commencement to the conclusion of the War. *Dublin*, R. Acheson for J. Sheppard & J. Milliken, 1769. 12° £2 15s (16594)
 In the same volume is "An historical account of the Expedition against the Ohio Indians in the year 1764 under the command of Henry Bouquet, Esq. *Dublin*, 1769." This copy of Rogers appears to differ from the title as given by Sabin, No. 72726, as it bears no reference on the title as to the "Historical Account" being appended.

Memorial containing a summary view of facts. Philadelphia, James Chattin, 1770. was translated and reprinted.

LOUISIANA. Voyage à la Louisiane, et le Continent de l'Amérique Septentrionale fait dans les Années 1794 à 1798 par L*** (i. e., Louis Norrisse Baudry Lozières). *Paris*, 1802. Map, nice copy, calf 8° £1 15s (28)

Includes Texas, and contains vocabularies of the Chippeway and Dacotah Indians; or a tour in the Canadas. *London*, 1856. 2 vols., plates, cloth 8° 8s 6d (28)

KINGSTON (W. H. G.). Western Wanderings; or a tour in the Canadas. *London*, 1856. 2 vols., plates, cloth 8° 8s 6d (28)

HAWTHORNE (Nathaniel). Passages in The American note books of N. Hawthorne. *London*, 1868. 2 vols., nice clean copy, 8° 8s 6d (28)

see second page.

of a settlement, by which the said Company was established in June, 1695, till November, 1700. Printed in the year 1700. 1 calf, extremely rare 8° £3 10s (28)

Relates entirely to the Scots Settlers at Darien.

NORTH WEST COAST. Varieties of literature from foreign literary journals. original MSS. now first published. *London*, 1795. 2 vols., fine copy, boards, uncut 8° £1 5s (28)

Contains the Journal of the voyage of Gregory Shalekhof, a Russian merchant.

Major Rogers originally entered the military service in the French and Indian War, for which he raised and commanded "Rogers' Rangers," a company that acquired a reputation for activity and daring, particularly in the region of Lake George. His name is perpetuated there by the precipice that is known as "Rogers' Slide," near which he escaped from the Indians, who, believing that he had slid down the steep defile of the mountain under the protection of the Great Spirit, made no attempt at further pursuit. On March 13th, 1758, with 170 men, he fought 100 French and 600 Indians and after losing 100 men and killing 150, he retreated. In 1759 he was sent by Sir Jeffrey Amherst from Crown Point to destroy the Indian village of St. Francis near the St. Lawrence River, which service he performed, killing 200 Indians. In 1760 he captured Detroit and other western posts, which were subsequently ceded to the British by the French.

t) Journals of, con-
several excursions
rals who commanded
orth America during
ich may be collected
stances of every
ontinent from the
conclusion of the
on for J. Sheppard
p. £3 15s (16594)
e is "An historical
on against the Ohio
54 under the com-
et, Esq. Dublin,
ers appears to differ
y Sabin, No. 72726,
on the title as to
" being appended.

nal containing a summary view
Philadelphia, James Chattin, 175
nslated and reprinted.

ANA. Voyage à la Louisiane, et
inent de l'Amérique Septentrionale
ns les Années 1794 à 1798 par B.
i. e., Louis Norriase Baudry d
(s). Paris, 1802. Map, nice copy, h
8° £1 15s (2862)

cludes Texas, and contains voc
f the Chippeway and Dacoteh Ind
TON (W. H. G.). Western Wan
or a tour in the Canadas. Lon
2 vols., plates, cloth 8° 8s 6d (284)

HORNE (Nathaniel). Passages fr
merican note books of N. Hawtho
, 1868. 2 vols., nice clean copy,
8° 8s 6d (2862)

second page.

ument, by which the said Compa
ublished in June, 1695, till Nov
00. Printed in the year 1700. H
remely rare 8° £3 10s (2861)
lates entirely to the Scots Settlen
en.

WEST COAST. Varieties of lit
om foreign literary journals
MSS, now first published. Lon
2 vols., fine copy, boards, uncut
8° £1 5s (2861)

contains the Journal of the voyage
Shalekhof, a Russian merch

Indian
quired
eorge.
lide,"
wn the
e no
100
ted.
Indian
rmed,
which

ROGERS (Major Robert). Journals of Major
Robert Rogers containing an account of the
several excursions he made under the gene-
rals who commanded upon the Continent
of North America during the late war. To
which is added AN HISTORICAL ACCOUNT
of the expedition against the Ohio Indians
in the year 1764, under the command of
Henry Bouquet, including his transactions
with the Indians, &c. With an introductory
account of the preceding campaign, and
battle at Bushey Run. Dublin, 1769. Half
morocco, very rare, pp. x + 218; An His-
torical Account, pp. xx, 99
12° £5 10s (21432)

Pages 47-80 of the second part contain
"Reflections on the War with the Savages
of North America," followed by Appendix I.
Construction of Forts against Indians. App.
II. Account of the French Forts ceded to
Great Britain in Louisiana. App. II. Rout
from Philadelphia to Fort Pitt. App. IV.
Number of Indian Towns situated on or
near the Ohio River. App. V. Names of
different Indian Nations in N. America with
the numbers of their fighting men. This
copy corresponds with the one mentioned
in the note to Sabin No. 72726 (Rogers),
having in the imprint, Horace's Hbad instead
of Horace's Head.

MAJOR ROGERS' JOURNALS, 1755.

751 FRENCH-INDIAN Wars. Journals of Major Robert Rogers; containing an account of the several excursions he made under the Generals who commanded upon the Continent of North America during the late War, from which may be collected the most material circumstances of every Campaign upon that Continent, from the Commencement to the conclusion of the War. To which is added an historical account of the Expedition against Ohio Indians in the year 1764 under the Command of Henry Bouquet, Brigadier-General in America, including his transactions with the Indians, relative to the delivery of the Prisoners and the preliminaries of Peace. With an introductory account of the preceding Campaign and Battle of Bushy Run. 12° half calf.

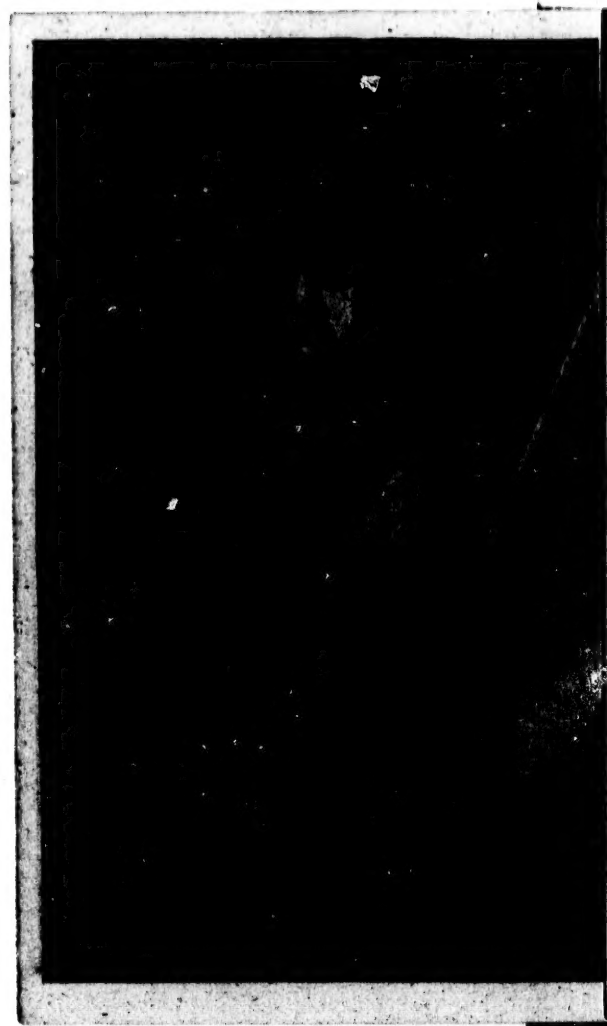
Dublin, 1770

Rare Edition. "The Journals of this celebrated Partisan Chief afford as many interesting tales of Border Warfare, in the French and Indian War which ended 17 years before the Revolution. It was while associated with Rogers that General Putnam is said to have experienced those wonderful adventures, with the relation of which our youthful nerves have so often thrilled."—*Field*. Autograph of G. Cuyler on title-page.

1755.

als of Major Rob-
several excursions
ed upon the Con-
from which may
es of every Cam-
encement to the
an historical ac-
in the year 1764
Brigadier-General
the Indians, rela-
preliminaries of
preceding Cam-
alf calf.

Dublin, 1770
ated Partisan Chief
in the French and
evolution. It was
is said to have ex-
tion of which our
Autograph of G.



JOURNALS

OF

Major ROBERT ROGERS:

CONTAINING

An Account of the several Excursions he made
under the Generals who commanded upon the
Continent of NORTH AMERICA, during
the late War.

FROM WHICH MAY BE COLLECTED

The most material Circumstances of every Campaign upon
that Continent, from the Commencement to the Conclusion
of the War.

TO WHICH IS ADDED

An Historical Account of the Expedition against the Ohio Indians
in the Year 1764, under the command of Henry Bouquet,
Esq; Colonel of Foot, and now Brigadier General in America,
including his Transactions with the Indians, relative to the
Delivery of the Prisoners, and the Preliminaries of Peace.
With an Introductory Account of the Preceding Campaign,
and Battle at Bushy Run.

D U B L I N:

Printed by R. ACHESON, at HORACE'S-HEAD, William Street,

FOR

J. MILLIKEN, No. 10. in Skinner-row.
M,DCC,LX,IX.

STANLEY

40 E 199

ROBERT ROBERTS: 2275

R 722
Office

O A I E I A T

THE AMERICAN, during

MAY BE COLLECTED

Commitment to the Constitution

282509

CHICAGO, Ill.

ment of the Proceeding Campaign, and the Preliminary of Peace with the Indians, relative to the new Indian General in America, the command of Henry Bouquet, of opposition against the Ohio Indians.

1990

10-11-68

8 Q

0-10

10-20

INTRODUCTION.

 I would be offering an affront to the public, should I pretend to have no private views in publishing the following JOURNALS; but they will excuse me if I leave them to conjecture what my particular views are, and claim the merit of impartially relating matters of fact, without disguise or equivocation. Most of those which relate to myself can at present be attested by living witnesses.

And should the troubles in America be renewed, and the savages repeat those scenes of barba-

rity they so often have acted on the British subjects, which there is great reason to believe will happen, I flatter myself, that such as are immediately concerned may reap some advantage from these pages.

Should any one take offence at what they may here meet with, before they venture upon exhibiting a charge, they are desired, in favour to themselves, to consider, that I am in a situation where they cannot attack me to their own advantage; that it is the soldier, not the scholar, that writes; and that many things here were wrote, not with silence and leisure, but in desarts and rocks and mountains, amidst the hurries, disorders, and noise of war, and under that depression of spirits, which is the natural

] e acted on the
n there is great
ll happen, I
uch as are im-
d may reap
n these pages.
ake offence at
meet with, be-
on exhibiting
desired, in fa-
to consider,
on where they
their own ad-
ne soldier, not
tes; and that
re wrote, not
re, but in de-
mountains, a-
disorders, and
nder that de-
which is the na-
tural

[v]

tural consequence of exhausting fa-
tigue. This was my situation when
the following Journals or Accounts
were transmitted to the generals
and commanders I acted under,
which I am not now at liberty to
correct, except in some very gross
and palpable errors.

It would perhaps gratify the cu-
rious to have a particular account
of my life, preceding the war; but
though I could easily indulge them
herein, without any dishonour to
myself, yet I beg they will be con-
tent with my relating only such
circumstances and occurrences as
led me to a knowledge of many
parts of the country, and tended in
some measure to qualify me for the
service I have since been employed
in. Such, in particular, was the
A 3 situation

situation of the place in which I received my early education, a frontier town in the province of New Hampshire, where I could hardly avoid obtaining some knowledge of the manners, customs, and language of the Indians, as many of them resided in the neighbourhood, and daily conversed and dealt with the English.

Between the years 1743 and 1755 my manner of life was such as led me to a general acquaintance both with the British and French settlements in North America, and especially with the uncultivated desert, the mountains, valleys, rivers, lakes, and several passes that lay between and contiguous to the said settlements. Nor did I content myself with the accounts

counts received from Indians, or the information of hunters, but travelled over large tracts of the country myself, which tended not more to gratify my curiosity, than to inure me to hardships, and, without vanity, I may say, to qualify me for the very service I have since been employed in.

About this time the proceedings of the French in America, were such as excited the jealousy of the English, especially in New-York and New-England; and as Crown-Point was the place from which, for many years, the Indians in the French interest had been fitted out against our settlements on the frontiers, a design was formed in the beginning of 1755 to dispossess them of that post; pursuant to

A 4 which

which, troops were levied in the several provinces of New England, New York, and New Jersey. The general rendezvous was appointed at Albany in the province of New York, and the troops put under the command of Major General (since Sir William) Johnson, I had the honour of commanding a company in the troops furnished by the province of New Hampshire, with which I made several excursions, pursuant to special orders from the governor of that province, on the northern and western frontiers, with a view to deter the French and Indians from making inroads upon us that way. In this manner I was employed till the month of July, when I received orders to repair to Albany,

] levied in the
New England,
Jersey. The
was appointed
governor of New
York put under
Major General
Johnson, I
commanded
the troops fur-
ther of New
York which I made
pursuant to
the governor
in the north-
western, with a
French and Indi-
an roads upon us
in manner I was
in month of July,
orders to repair to
Albany,

[ix]

Albany, at which place I tarried
till August 26th, and was then or-
dered with 100 men to escort the
provision-waggons from thence to
the Carrying-Place, then so call-
ed, since Fort-Edward. Here I
waited upon the General, to whom
I was recommended as a person
well acquainted with the haunts
and passes of the enemy, and the
Indian method of fighting, and
was by him dispatched with small
parties on several tours towards the
French posts, and was on one of
these up Hudson's River on the 8th
of September, when Baron Di-
elkai was made prisoner, and the
French and Indians, under his
command defeated, at the south-
end of Lake George.

A 5.

The

[x]

The 24th of September I received orders from the General to proceed with four men to Crown Point, and, if practicable, to bring a prisoner from thence; and with an account of the manner in which I executed these orders, I shall begin my JOURNALS.

September I re-
the General
men to Crown
able, to bring
ce; and with
anner in which
ers, I shall be-



S^r WILLIAM JOHNSON .

[1]



A.

JOURNAL, &c.

September 24, 1755.

FOURSUANT to orders of this date
from Major-General Johnson, Com-
mander in chief of the Provincial For-
ces, raised for the reduction of Crown-
Point, I embarked with four men up-
on Lake George, to reconnoitre the strength of
the enemy, and proceeding down the Lake twenty
five miles, I landed on the west side, leaving two
men in charge of the boat, while I marched with
the

JOHNSON.

the other two 'till the 29th, when I had a fair view of the fort at Crown-Point, and discovered a large body of Indians round the Fort, and from their repeated irregular firing, supposed they were shooting at marks, (a diversion much in use among the savages). At night I crept through the enemy's guard into a small village lying south of the fort, and passing their centries to an eminence south-west of it, from whence I discovered they were building a battery, and had already thrown up an entrenchment on that side of the fort. The next day, from an eminence at a small distance from the former, I discovered an encampment, which extended from the fort south-east to a wind-mill, at about 30 yards distance; as near as I could judge, their number amounted to about 500 men: but finding no opportunity to procure a captive, and that our small party was discovered, I judged it proper to begin a retreat homeward the 1st of October. I took my route within two miles of Ticonderoga, from whence I observed a large smoke to arise, and heard the explosion of a number of small arms; but our provision being expended, we could not tarry to ascertain the number of the enemy there. On the 2d we arrived at the place where we left our boat in the charge of two men, but to our great mortification found they were gone, and no provisions left. This circumstance hastened us to the encampment with all possible speed, where we arrived the

4th, not a little fatigued and distressed with hunger and cold.

October 7, 1755, I received orders of this date from General Johnson, to reconnoitre the French troops at Ticonderoga. Accordingly I proceeded at night to a point of land on the west side of the lake, where we landed, hid our canoe, and left two men in charge of it. The next day, with the other three, I marched to the point at Ticonderoga, where we arrived about noon. I here observed a body of men, which I judged to be about 200 in number, who had thrown up an entrenchment, and prepared large quantities of hewn timber in the adjacent woods. We remained here the second night, and the next morning saw them lay the foundation of a fort, on the point which commands the pass from Lake George, to Lake Champlain, and the entrance of South Bay, or Wood Creek. Having made what discoveries we could, we began our return, in which we found that the enemy had a large advanced guard at the north end of Lake George, where the river issues out of it into Lake Champlain. While we were viewing these, I perceived a bark-canoe, with nine Indians and a Frenchman in it, going up the Lake. We kept sight of them 'till they passed the point of land, where our canoe and men were left, where, when we arrived, we had information from our people, that the above Indians and Frenchman had landed

landed on an island six miles to the south of us, near the middle of the lake. In a short time after, we saw them put off from the island, and steer directly towards us; upon which we put ourselves in readiness to receive them in the best manner we could, and gave them a salute at about 100 yards distance, which reduced their number to four. We then took boat and pursued them down the lake, till they were relieved by two canoes, which obliged us to retreat towards our encampment at Lake George, where we arrived the 10th of October.

October 15, 1755. Agreeable to orders of this date from General Johnson, I embarked with forty men in five boats. Our design was to discover the strength of the enemy's advanced guard, and, if possible, to decoy the whole, or part of them, into an ambush; but tho' we were indefatigable in our endeavours for several days, yet all our attempts of this kind proved abortive; and, as an account of our several movements during this scout would little gratify the reader, I shall omit giving a particular detail of them. We returned safe to our encampment at Lake George on the 19th.

October 21, 1755. I had orders from General Johnson of this date, to embark for Crown Point, with a party of four men, in quest of a prisoner. At night we landed on the west-side of Lake George. twenty.

to the south of us, near
a short time after, we
land, and steer directly
put ourselves in readi-
ness in manner we could,
out 100 yards distance,
to four. We then took
the lake, till they were
obliged us to retreat
Lake George, where
ber.

able to orders of this
I embarked with forty
gn was to discover the
vanced guard, and, if
or part of them, into
re indefatigable in our
yet all our attempts of
and, as an account of
g this scout would little
nit giving a particular
ed safe to our encamp-
e 19th.

d. orders from General
bark for Crown Point,
in quest of a prisoner.
b-side of Lake George.
twenty.

twenty-five miles from the English camp. The re-
mainder of the way we marched by land, and the
26th came in sight of the fort. In the evening we
approached nearer, and next morning found our-
selves within about 300 yards of it. My men lay
concealed in a thicket of willows, while I crept
something nearer, to a large pine-log, where I con-
cealed myself, by holding bushes in my hand. Soon
after sun-rise the soldiers issued out in such num-
bers, that my men and I could not possibly join
each other without a discovery. About 10 o'clock
a single man marched out directly towards our am-
bush. When I perceived him within ten yards of
me, I sprung over the log, and met him, and of-
fered him quarters, which he refused, and made a
pass at me with a dirk, which I avoided, and pre-
sented my fuses to his breast; but notwithstanding,
he still pushed on with resolution, and obliged me
to dispatch him. This gave an alarm to the enemy,
and made it necessary for us to hasten to the moun-
tain. I arrived safe at our camp the 30th, with all
my party.

November 4, 1755. Agreeable to orders from
General Johnson this day, I embarked for the
enemy's advanced guard before mentioned, with a
party of thirty men, in four battoes, mounted with
two wall-pieces each. The next morning, a little
before day-light, we arrived within half a mile of
them,

them, where we landed, and concealed our boats; I then sent out four men as spies, who returned the next evening, and informed me, that the enemy had no works round them, but lay entirely open to an assault; which advice I dispatched immediately to the General, desiring a sufficient force to attack them, which, notwithstanding the General's earnestness and activity in the affair, did not arrive till we were obliged to retreat. On our return, however, we were met by a reinforcement, sent by the General, whereupon I returned again towards the enemy, and the next evening sent two men to see if the enemy's sentries were alert, who approached so near as to be discovered and fired at by them, and were so closely pursued in their retreat, that unhappily our whole party was discovered. The first notice I had of this being the case, was from two canoes with thirty men in them, which I concluded came out with another party by land, in order to force us between two fires; to prevent which, I with Lieutenant M^cCurdy, and fourteen men, embarked in two boats, leaving the remainder of the party on shore, under the command of Captain Putnam.—In order to decoy the enemy within the reach of our wall-pieces, we steered as if we intended to pass by them, which luckily answered our expectations; for they boldly headed us till within about an hundred yards, when we discharged the before mentioned pieces, which killed several of them,

concealed our boats; who returned the enemy's fire, that the enemy lay entirely open to attack. I immediately sent a force to attack the General's camp, which did not arrive till after our return, however, sent by the General again towards the camp, two men to see if the enemy was there, who approached and fired at by them, their retreat, that was discovered. The result of the case, was from the fact, which I conjectured by land, in order to prevent which, I sent fourteen men, and the remainder of the command of Captain Johnson, to discover the enemy within the fort, as if we intended to attack. I immediately answered our summons till within view of the fort, where we discharged the cannon, which killed several of them, and put the rest to flight, in which we drove them so near where our land-party lay, that they were again galled by them; several of the enemy were tumbled into the water, and their canoes rendered very leaky. At this time I discovered their party by land, and gave our people notice of it, who thereupon embarked likewise, without receiving any considerable injury from the enemy's fire, notwithstanding it was for some time very brisk upon them. We warmly pursued the enemy, and again got an opportunity to discharge our wall-pieces upon them, which confused them much, and obliged them to disperse.—We pursued them down the lake to their landing, where they were received and covered by 100 men, upon whom we again discharged our wall-pieces, and obliged them to retire; but finding their number vastly superior to ours, we judged it most prudent to return to our encampment at Lake George, where we safely arrived on the 8th of November.

Nov. 10, 1755. Pursuant to orders I received this day from Gen. Johnson, in order to discover the enemy's strength and situation at Ticonderago, I proceeded on the scout with a party of ten men on the 12th instant, and on the 14th arrived within view of the fort at that place, and found they had erected three new barracks and four store-houses in the fort, between which and the water they had eighty

*Marie Antoinette given Johnson
was born 12 Nov 1755*

eighty battoes hauled upon the beach, and about fifty tents near the fort; they appeared to be very busy at work. Having by these discoveries answered the design of our march, we returned, and arrived at our encampment the 19th of November.

December 19, 1755. Having had a month's repose, I proceeded, agreeable to orders from General Johnson, with two men, once more to reconnoitre the French at Ticonderoga. In our way we discovered a fire upon an island adjacent to the route we took, which, as we supposed, had been kindled by some of the enemy who were there. This obliged us to lie by and act like fishermen, the better to deceive them till night came on, when we proceeded and retired to the west-side of the lake 15 miles north of our fort. Here concealing our boat, the 20th we pursued our march by land, and on the 21st, at noon, were in sight of the French fort, where we found their people still deeply engaged at work, and discovered four pieces of cannon mounted on the south-east bastion, two at the north-east towards the woods, and two on the south. By what I judged, the number of their troops were about 500. I made several attempts to take a prisoner, by way-laying their paths; but they always passed in numbers vastly superior to mine, and thereby disappointed me. We approached very near their fort by night, and were driven by the cold (which now

the beach, and about
appeared to be very
discoveries answered
returned, and arrived
of November.

ing had a month's re-
orders from General
more to reconnoitre
In our way we disco-
acent to the route we
had been kindled by
there. This obliged
men, the better to de-
when we proceeded
of the lake 15 miles
cealing our boat, the
land, and on the 21st,
rench fort, where we
engaged at work, and
annon mounted on the
north-east towards the
. By what I judged,
were about 500. I
e a prisoner, by way-
always passed in num-
e, and thereby disap-
d very near their fort
y the cold (which now

was,

was very severe) to take shelter in one of their
evacuated huts; before day, there was a fall of
snow, which obliged us with all possible speed to
march homeward, lest the enemy should perceive
our tracks, and pursue us.

We found our boat in safety, and had the good
fortune (after being almost exhausted with hunger,
cold, and fatigue) to kill two deer, with which be-
ing refreshed, on the 24th we returned to Fort
William Henry (a fortress erected in this year's
campaign) at the south end of Lake George. About
this time General Johnson retired to Albany, to
which place commissioners were sent from the feve-
ral governments whose troops had been under his
command (New Hampshire only excepted). These
commissioners were empowered by their respective
constituents with the assent of a council of war, to
garrison Fort William Henry and Fort Edward,
for the winter, with part of the troops that had
served the preceding year. Accordingly a regiment
was formed, to which Boston government furnish-
ed a Colonel—Connecticut a Lieutenant-Colonel—
and New York a Major: after which it was adjud-
ged, both by Gen. Johnson and these Commission-
ers, that it would be of great use to leave one com-
pany of woodsmen or rangers under my command,
to make excursions towards the enemy's forts during
the winter; I accordingly remained, and did duty
the

the whole winter, until called upon by General Shirley.

January 14, 1756. I this day marched with a party of seventeen men, to reconnoitre the French forts; we proceeded down the lake, on the ice, upon skais, and halted for refreshment near the fall out of Lake George into Lake Champlain.—At night we renewed our march, and, by day-break on the 16th, formed an ambush on a point of land on the east shore of Lake Champlain, within gunshot of the path in which the enemy passed from one fort to the other. About sun-rise, two sledges laden with fresh beef were presented to our view, we intercepted the drivers, destroying their loading, and afterwards returned to Fort William Henry, where I arrived with my prisoners and party in good health the 17th.

January 26, 1756. Pursuant to orders of this date, from Colonel Glasier, I marched from Lake George with a party of fifty men, with a design to discover the strength and works of the enemy at Crown Point.

On the 2d of February, we arrived within a mile of that fortress, where we climbed a very steep mountain, from which we had a clear and full prospect of the fort, and an opportunity of taking
a plan.

d upon by General

day marched with a
connoitre the French
lake, on the ice,
settlement near the fall
Lake Champlain.—At
, and, by day-break
on a point of land
Champlain, within gun-
the enemy passed from
sun-rise, two sledges
presented to our view,
destroying their loading,
Fort William Henry,
ners and party in good

ant to orders of this
marched from Lake
men, with a design to
works of the enemy at

arrived within a mile
climbed a very steep
had a clear and full
opportunity of taking
a plan

a plan of the enemy's works there. In the even-
ing we retired to a small village, half a mile from
the fort, and formed an ambuscade on each side
of the road leading from the fort to the village.
Next morning a Frenchman fell into our hands ;
soon after we discovered two more, but they un-
luckily got sight of us before they were in our pow-
er, and hastily retired to the fort. Finding our-
selves discovered by the enemy by this accident,
we employed ourselves while we dared stay in set-
ting fire to the houses and barns of the village, with
which were consumed large quantities of wheat,
and other grain ; we also killed about fifty cattle,
and then retired, leaving the whole village in flames,
and arrived safe at our fort, with our prisoner, the
6th of February.

February 29, 1756. Agreeable to orders from
Colonel Glasier, I this day marched with a party of
fifty-six men down the west-side of Lake George.
We continued our route north-ward till the 3th of
March, and then steered east to Lake Champlain,
about six miles north of Crown Point, where, by
the intelligence we had from the Indians, we ex-
pected to find some inhabited villages.—We then
attempted to cross the lake, but found the ice too
weak. The 17th we returned and marched round
the bay to the west of Crown Point, and at night
got into the cleared land among their houses and
barns ;

barns; here we formed an ambush, expecting their labourers out to tend their cattle, and clean their grain, of which there were several barns full; we continued there that and the next day till dark, when discovering none of the enemy, we set fire to the houses and barns, and marched off. In our return I took a fresh view of Ticonderoga, and reconnoitred the ground between that fort and the advanced guard on Lake George, approaching so near as to see their centries on the ramparts, and obtained all the knowledge of their works, strength, and situation, that I desired.

The 14th of March, we returned safe to Fort William-Henry.

The next day, after my return from this scout, I received a letter, dated February 24, 1756, from Mr. William Alexander of New-York, who was secretary to Mr. Shirley, Commander in chief of the troops at Oswego the preceding year, and who now, upon the decease of General Braddock, succeeded to the chief command of all his Majesty's forces in North-America, and was now at Boston, preparing for the ensuing campaign, being previously recommended to this gentleman by General Johnson. I was directed by the above-mentioned letter to wait on him at Boston; of which I informed the commanding officer at the fort, and, with his

buff, expecting their
 title, and clean their
 several barns full; we
 next day till dark,
 enemy, we set fire to
 rched off. In our re-
 onderoga, and recon-
 hat fort and the ad-
 ge, approaching so
 n the ramparts, and
 their works, strength,

returned safe to Fort

urn from this scout, I
 uary 24, 1756, from
 New-York, who was
 commander in chief of
 ceeding year, and who
 eneral Braddock, suc-
 ed of all his Majesty's
 d was now at Boston,
 mpaign, being previ-
 gentleman by General
 the above-mentioned
 of which I inform-
 at the fort, and, with
 his

his approbation, I set out on the 17th of March,
 leaving the command of my company to Mr. Noah
 Johnson, my Ensign; my brother Richard Rogers,
 who was my Lieutenant, being sent to Boston by
 the commanding officer on some dispatches previ-
 ous to this.

On the 23d, I waited on the General, and
 met with a very friendly reception; he soon inti-
 mated his design of giving me the command of
 an independent company of rangers, and the very
 next morning I received the commission, with a set
 of instructions.

According to the General's orders, my compa-
 ny was to consist of sixty private, at 3s. New
 York currency per day, three serjants at 4s. an
 Ensign at 5s. a Lieutenant at 7s. and my own pay
 was fixed at 10s. per day. Ten Spanish dollars were
 allowed to each man towards providing cloaths,
 arms, and blankets. My orders were to raise this
 company as soon as possible, to enlist none but such
 as were used to travelling and hunting, and in
 whose courage and fidelity I could confide; they
 were, moreover to be subject to military discipline,
 and the articles of war.

Our rendezvous was appointed at Albany, from
 thence to proceed in four whale-boats to lake
 George,

George, and, " from time to time, to use my best
endeavours to distress the French and their allies,
by sackings, burning, and destroying their houses,
barns, barracks, canoes, battoes, &c. and by kill-
ing their cattle of every kind; and at all times to
endeavour to way lay, attack and destroy their
convoys of provisions by land and water, in any
part of the country where I could find them."

With these instructions, I received letters to the
commanding officers at Fort William-Henry and
Fort Edward directing them to forward the service,
with which I was now particularly charged.

When my company was completed, a part
marched under the command of Lieutenant Ro-
gers to Albany; with the remainder, I was order-
ed to march through the woods to No. 4, then a
frontier town greatly exposed to the enemy;
where,

April 28, 1756, I received orders to march from
thence to Crown Point, in pursuance of which we
travelled through deserts and mountains. The se-
cond day of our march, my second Lieutenant,
Mr. John Stark was taken sick, and obliged to re-
turn, with whom I sent six men to guard him to
Fort Edward.

We

to time, to use my best
French and their allies,
destroying their houses,
battoes, &c. and by kill-
ing; and at all times to
track and destroy their
land and water, in any
place I could find them."

I received letters to the
Port William-Henry and
to forward the service,
particularly charged.

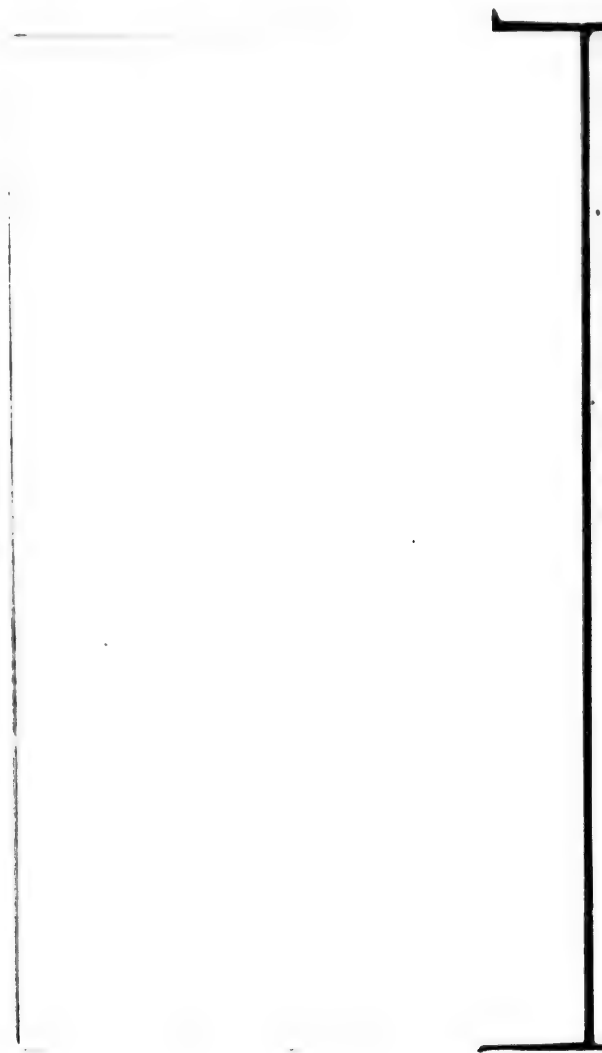
was completed, a part
of Lieutenant Ro-
sario, I was order-
ed to No. 4, then a
posed to the enemy;

received orders to march from
the pursuance of which we
went to the mountains. The se-
cond Lieutenant,
sick, and obliged to re-
six men to guard him to

We



John Stark



We continued our march till the 5th of May, when I arrived with nine men at Lake Champlain, four miles south of Crown Point. Here we concealed our packs, and marched up to a village on the east-side, about two miles distant from Crown Point, but found no inhabitant there. We lay in wait the whole day following, opposite to Crown Point, expecting some party to cross the lake; but nothing appeared except about four or five hundred men in canoes and battoes, coming up the lake from St. John's to Crown Point. We kept our stations till next day, ten o'clock A. M. to observe the motions of the enemy, but finding no opportunity to trapan any of them, we killed twenty-three head of cattle, the tongues of which were a very great refreshment to us on our journey. We at this time discovered eleven canoes manned with a considerable number of French and Indians crossing the lake directly towards us, upon which we retired; and the better to escape our pursuers we dispersed, each man taking a different route. We afterwards assembled at the place where we concealed our packs, and on a raft crossed over to the west-side of the lake. In our way we had a view of the French and Indians, encamped at the old Indian carrying-place, near Ticonderoga, and the 11th of May arrived safe at Fort William-Henry. Mr. Spack, with his party, arrived at Fort-Edward three days before. In their way they discovered a scout-

ing party of three or four hundred Indians. Lieutenant Rogers with his party had arrived some days before this, and was at this time out upon a scout.

May 20, 1756. Agreeable to orders from the General, I set out with a party of eleven men to reconnoitre the French advanced guards. The next day, from the top of a mountain, we had a view of them, and judged their number to be about 3000; they were busy in fortifying themselves with palisades. From the other side of the mountain we had a prospect of Ticonderoga fort, and from the ground their encampment took up, I judged it to consist of 1000 men. This night we lodged on the mountain, and next morning marched to the Indian carrying-path, that leads from lake George to Lake Champlain, and formed an ambuscade between the French guard and Ticonderoga fort. About six o'clock 118 Frenchmen passed by without discovering us; in a few minutes after, twenty-two more came the same road, upon whom we fired, killed six, and took one a prisoner; but the large party returning, obliged us to retire in haste, and we arrived safe with our prisoner, at Fort William-Henry the 23d.

The

hundred Indians. Lieu-
ty had arrived some days
this time out upon a

able to orders from the
a party of eleven men to
advanced guards. The
a mountain, we had a
their number to be a-
in fortifying themselves
the other side of the moun-
f Ticonderoga fort, and
encampment took up, I
ooo men. This night
mountain, and next morn-
dian carrying-path, that
e to Lake Champlain,
de between the French
oga fort. About six
passed by without disco-
minutes after, twenty-two
d, upon whom we fired,
a prisoner; but the large
us to retire in haste, and
prisoner, at Fort William-

The

The prisoner we had taken reported, "that a party of 220 French and Indians were preparing to invest the out-parties at Fort Edward," which occasioned my marching the next morning with a party of 78 men, to join a detachment of Col. Bayley's regiment, to scour the woods as far as South Bay, if possible to intercept the enemy; but we could not discover them.

June 13, 1756. Agreeable to orders this evening, I embarked with a party of 26 men in battoes upon Lake George, to revisit the French advanced guard; excessive thunder and lightning obliged us to land at about ten miles distance from our fort, where we spent the night. The next morning about sun-rise, we heard the explosion of upwards of twenty small arms, on the opposite side of the lake, which we supposed to be a party of French and Indians, cleaning their guns after the rain. In the evening we embarked again, and early in the morning of the 16th drew up our battoes about four miles distant from the advanced guard, and afterwards lay in ambush by a path leading from thence to a mountain, in order to surprize the enemy, who went there daily in parties, to take a view of the lake; but finding they were not at that place, we marched to the spot where the enemy had posted their advanced guard, but they had retired and demolished all their works there;

B 2

we

we then continued our march towards Ticonderoga, near which place we ascended an eminence, and had a clear view of their works. I judged that their garrison and encampment consisted of about 3000 men: We then set out on our return, and arrived at Fort William-Henry the 18th instant, except one man, who strayed from us, and who did not get in till the 23d, then almost famished for want of sustenance.

About this time the General augmented my company to seventy men, and sent me six light whale-boats from Albany, with order to proceed immediately to Lake Champlain, to cut off, if possible, the provisions and flying parties of the enemy. Accordingly,

June 28, 1756. I embarked with fifty men in five whale-boats, and proceeded to an island in Lake George. The next day, at about five miles distance from this island we landed our boats, and carried them about six miles over a mountain to South Bay, where we arrived the 3d of July. The following evening we embarked again, and went down the bay to within six miles of the French fort, where we concealed our boats till the evening. We then embarked again, and passed by Ticonderoga undiscovered; tho' we were so near the enemy as to hear their country's watch-word. We judged from the

ch towards Ticonderoga, ended an eminence, and works. I judged that moment consisted of about out on our return, and Henry the 18th instant, rayed from us, and who d, then almost famished

General augmented my en, and sent me six light, with order to proceed mplain, to cut off, if pos- sible, any parties of the enemy.

embarked with fifty men in proceeded to an island in at day, at about five miles we landed our boats, and miles over a mountain to rived the 3d of July. The embarked again, and went six miles of the French fort, boats till the evening. We and passed by Ticonderoga ere so near the enemy as to word. We judged from the

the number of their fires, that they had a body of about 2000 men, and the lake in this place to be near 400 yards wide. About five miles further down, we again concealed our boats, and lay by all day. We saw several battoes going and coming upon the lake. At night we put off again, with a design to pass by Crown Point, but afterwards judged it imprudent by reason of the clearness of the night, so lay concealed again the next day, when near a hundred boats passed by us, seven of which came very near the point w^h ere we were, and would have landed there; but the officer insisted, in our hearing, upon going about 150 yards further, where they landed, and dined in our view. About nine o'clock we re-embarked, and passed the fort at Crown Point, and again concealed our boats at about 10 miles distance from it. This day, being July 7th, 30 boats, and a schooner of about 30 or 40 tons, passed by us towards Canada. We set out again in the evening, and landed about fifteen miles further down, from which place I sent a party for further discovery, who brought intelligence of a schooner at anchor, about a mile from us; we immediately lightened our boats, and prepared to board her; but were prevented by two lighters coming up the lake, who, we found intended to land where we were posted; these we fired upon, then hailed them, and offered them quarters, if they would come ashore; but they hastily pushed towards the

opposite shore, where we pursued and intercepted them: we found their number to be twelve, three of which were killed by our fire, and two wounded, one of them in such a manner that he soon died. We sunk and destroyed their vessels and cargoes, which consisted chiefly of wheat and flour, wine and brandy; some few casks of the latter we carefully concealed. The prisoners informed us, that they were a part of 500 men, the remainder of which were not far behind on their passage, which induced us to hasten our return to our garrison, where, with our prisoners, we safely arrived the 15th of July. These prisoners, upon examination, reported, " That a great number of regular troops and militia were assembling at Chamblee, and destined for Carillon, or Ticonderoga * : that great quantities of provisions were transporting there, and a new General † with two regiments lately arrived from France: that there was no talk of any design upon our Forts on this side; but that a party of 300 French, and 20 Indians, had already set out to intercept our convoys of provisions between Albany and Lake George: that 60 livres was the reward for an

* The former is the French, the latter the Indian name, signifying the meeting or confluence of three waters.

† The Marquis de Montcalm, who commanded in the reduction of Oswego this year, and of Fort William-Henry, the year following.

performed and intercepted
 mber to be twelve, three
 r fire, and two wounded,
 manner that he soon died.
 their vessels and cargoes,
 f wheat and flour, wine
 fks of the latter we care-
 fisoners informed us, that
 o men, the remainder of
 d on their passage, which
 return to our garrison,
 rs, we safely arrived the
 oners, upon examination,
 number of regular troops
 ng at Chamblee, and de-
 iconderoga *: that great
 ere transporting there, and
 o regiments lately arrived
 was no talk of any design
 le; but that a party of 300
 had already set out to in-
 rovisions between Albany
 o livres was the reward for
 an

, the latter the Indian name, sig-
 ce of three waters.

n, who commanded in the reduc-
 of Fort William-Henry, the year

an English scalp, and that the prisoners were sold
 in Canada for 50 crowns each: that their prospect
 of an harvest was very encouraging, but that the
 small-pox made great havock amongst the inhabi-
 tants." About the time of my setting out upon
 this scout, Major General Shirley was superseded
 in his command by Major General Abercrombie,
 who arrived at the head-quarters in Albany on the
 25th of June, and brought with him two regiments
 of regular troops from England. I therefore, upon
 my return, wrote to his Excellency, desiring leave
 to lay before him the minutes of my last scout, and
 to recommend to his consideration an augmentation
 of the rangers. The General permitted me, with
 my brother Richard Rogers, to wait upon him at
 Albany. In this interview we discoursed on the sub-
 ject of my letter, in consequence of which he im-
 mediately ordered a new company of rangers to
 be raised, and gave the command of it to my bro-
 ther *, appointed Noah Johnson, my former En-
 sign, his First Lieutenant, Nathaniel Abbot his
 Second Lieutenant, and Caleb Page his Ensign.
 John Stark, formerly my Second Lieutenant, was
 appointed my First, John M'Curdy succeeded to
 his place, and Jonathan Burbank was appointed
 my Ensign.

August

B 4

* He completed his company in 28 days, and by the Ge-
 neral's orders, went up Mohawke -river, to serve as a scouting
 party for the troops that way.

August 2, 1756. Agreeable to orders received of General Abercrombie at Albany, the 23d of July, I embarked this day at Fort William-Henry, on board one of the lighters built there this summer, with twenty-five of my company, in order to reconnoitre the enemy at Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and sixty men under Capt. Larnard of the provincials, who had General Winslow's || orders to proceed with his men to the French advanced guard; but he not being acquainted with the way thither, put himself under my command. We landed this morning about fifteen miles down Lake George, and proceeded with the party till the 4th in the evening, and encamped about a mile from the advanced guard. The 5th in the morning we mustered the whole party, and got to the summit of a hill, west of the advanced guard, where we discovered two advanced posts, which I then imagined was the whole of the guard, one of them on the west-side, half a mile southward of Lake Champlain, the other on the east-side of the Lake, opposite the former, at the old Indian carrying-place. We judged there were about 400 men on the east, and 200 on the west. After deliberating with Capt. Larnard upon the strength and disposition of the enemy,

|| General Winslow commanded the provincial troops this year by virtue of a commission from the several provinces, who were concerned in 1755, in the same expedition, and was now with the greatest part of the provincial troops at Lake George.

able to orders received
at Albany, the 23d of
at Fort William-Henry,
ers built there this sum-
ny company, in order to
Ticonderoga and Crown
er Capt. Larnard of the
eral Winslow's orders
to the French advanced
acquainted with the way
ny command. We land-
teen miles down Lake
th the party till the 4th
ped about a mile from
5th in the morning we
nd got to the summit of
d guard, where we dis-
y, which I then imagined
d, one of them on the
ward of Lake Cham-
t-side of the Lake, op-
ld Indian carrying-place.
ut 400 men on the east,
deliberating with Capt.
h and disposition of the
enemy,

the provincial troops this year
several provinces, who were
expedition, and was now with
troops at Lake George.

enemy, and the report of our advanced party we,
concluded it unadvisable to continue there any
longer. He returned towards Fort William-Henry,
and I went on with my own party till we came
within view of Ticonderoga Fort, where, from an
eminence, I discovered the situation, but could not
ascertain the strength of it to my satisfaction.

August 6, I went down towards Crown Point,
by the west-side of Lake Champlain, and discovered
several battoes passing from that place to Ticonde-
roga with troops on board. We then proceeded
to the place where we burnt the village, as men-
tioned before, and there encamped, and perceived
a party sallying out, driving a number of horses to
feed.

The 7th we lay in ambush by the road, with a
design to intercept such as might come out to drive
in the cattle; but no one appearing for that pur-
pose, we approached nearer, to within half a mile
of the fort, where we were discovered by two
Frenchmen, before they were in our power. This
accident obliged us to make a retreat, in which we
killed upwards of forty cattle. We arrived at Fort
William-Henry, August 10.

A company of Stockbridge Indians was this year
employed in his Majesty's service, commanded by

B 5,

Indian

Indian officers, properly commissioned by General Shirley, before he was superseded in his command: General Abercrombie was somewhat at a loss how to dispose of this company, and applied to Sir William Johnson, who advised, that a part *, viz. thirty privates and a Lieutenant, should scout and scour the woods under my direction, which party had arrived while I was out upon my last scout, and Lieutenant Stark had strengthened their party with some of our people, and sent them out with particular directions what route to take, the day before I arrived.

About this time his Excellency the Earl of Loudoun arrived at Albany, and had taken upon him the command of the army, to whom I applied as I had done before to Gen. Abercrombie, transmitting to him an account of the Indian scout above-mentioned (who returned the 13th with two French scalps, agreeable to their barbarous custom) and desiring that with them I might attempt to penetrate into Canada, and distress the inhabitants, by burning their harvest (now nearly ripe) and destroying their cattle.

Accordingly, August 16, we embarked in whale-boats in two departments, the one commanded by
Lieutenant

* The remainder of this Indian company, with their Captain, were sent to Saratoga, to be under the direction of Colonel Burton.

]
 mmissioned by General
 rfeded in his command.
 omewhat at a loss how
 y, and applied to Sir
 ifed, that a part *, viz-
 mant, should scout and
 direction, which party
 upon my last scout, and
 thened their party with
 nt them out with parti-
 to take, the day before

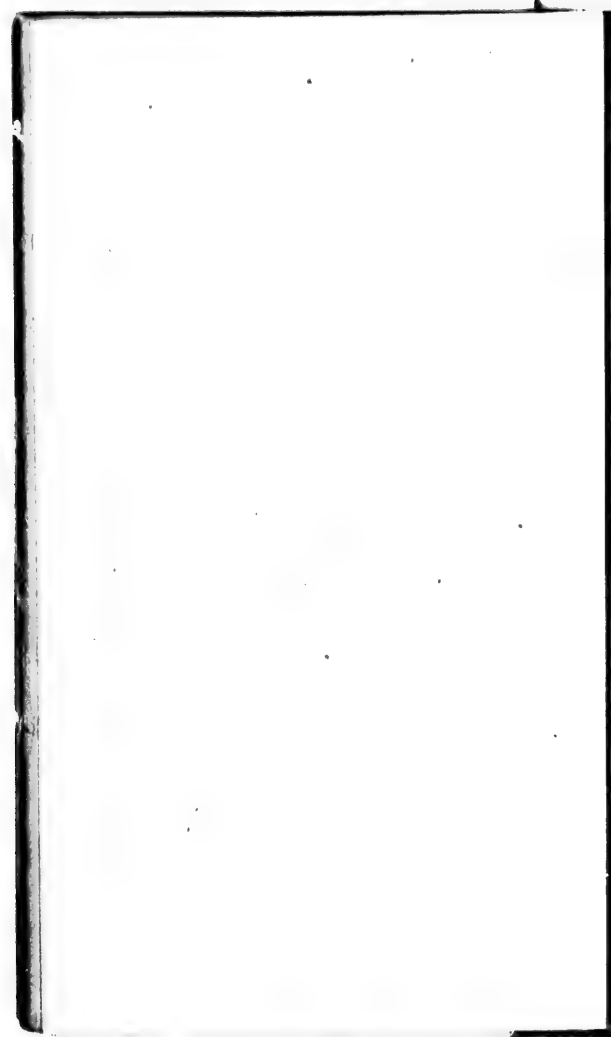
llency the Earl of Lou-
 nd had taken upon him
 to whom I applied as
 Abercrombie, transmit-
 the Indian scout above-
 ne 13th with two French
 barbarous custom) and
 might attempt to pene-
 trefe the inhabitants, by
 nearly ripe) and destroy-

we embarked in whale-
 the one commanded by
 Lieutenant

a company, with their Captain,
 the direction of Colonel Burton.



LORD LOUDOUN.



Lieutenant Stark, the other by myself.—The next morning we joined each other, at which time also fell in with us a party of eight Mohocks, who had marched out from Fort William-Henry the day before. We then marched directly to the place where we left our whale-boats the 7th of July, proceeding about twenty-five miles northward of Crown Point fort, on the west-side of Lake Champlain, where we all (excepting one man who strayed from us and returned) arrived safe the 24th. We embarked again in our boats, and steered down the lake toward St. John's. The 25th we proceeded twenty miles further, and about midnight discovered a schooner standing up the lake with a fair wind towards Crown Point; they passed us so swiftly that we could not possibly board her, as we intended.

The 26th we landed, and the Mohocks left us to join another party of theirs then out on a scout.

The 27th we got on a point, with a design to intercept the enemy's battoes, that might pass up and down the lake; but not discovering any, and our provisions growing short, we returned up the lake, and landed eight miles north of the fort at Crown Point, on the east-side of the lake.

The 29th in the morning we marched to a village lying east of the fort, and in our way took prisoners,

soners, a man, his wife, and daughter, (a girl about fourteen years of age); with these prisoners we returned, and arrived safe at Fort William-Henry, Sept. 22, 1756.

The man-prisoner, above-mentioned, upon examination, reported, " That he was born at Vaillac, " in the province of Guienne in France: that he " had been in Canada about fifteen years, and in " the colonies service about six, and two years at " Crown Point: that there were only 300 men at " Crown Point, and those chiefly inhabitants of " the adjacent villages; that there were 4000 men " at Ticonderoga or Carillon, 1500 of which were " regular troops, who had a sufficiency of all kinds " of provisions: that he never was at Ticonderoga " or at the advance guard, but heard there were " only fifteen men at the latter: that the French " had 600 Indians at Ticonderoga, and expected " 600 more: that 1200 were arrived at Quebec " for Carillon, which last 1800 were under the " command of Mons. Scipio de la Masure: that " they had a great quantity of cannon, mortars, " shells, &c. at Ticonderoga, but he did not know " the number or quantity: that they expected the " above re-inforcement in two or three days at " Ticonderoga, having sent boats to Montreal to " fetch them: that they understood by a letter that " Oswego had fallen into their hands, but the news " was

daughter, (a girl about
these prisoners we re-
Fort William-Henry,

-mentioned, upon exa-
he was born at Vaifac,
ine in France: that he
ut fifteen years, and in
t six, and two years at
were only 300 men at
chiefly inhabitants of
t there were 4000 men
n, 1500 of which were
a sufficiency of all kinds
ver was at Ticonderoga
but heard there were
atter: that the French
nderoga, and expected
were arrived at Quebec
1800 were under the
io de la Mafure: that
y of cannon, mortars-
ga, but he did not know
that they expected the
two or three days at
t boats to Montreal to
derstood by a letter that
their hands, but the news
" was

" was not confirmed: that they had heard we in-
" tended to invest Carillon, but did not know what
" movements were intended on their side should
" we neglect it: that they had 150 battoes on Lake
" Champlain, which were kept at Carillon, thirty-
" five of which constantly plied between Montreal
" and that fortress: that Monf. Montcalm com-
" manded at Frontinac with 5000 men, but did
" not know whether these troops were regulars or
" provincials: that a great number of vessels had
" arrived at Canada with provisions and military
" stores: that they heard we had several ships in
" the river St. Lawrence: that Monf. le Conte
" de Levi commanded at Carillon, and came last
" May from France; and that, since the two last
" shallops or lighters (before-mentioned) were
" taken, they had augmented the number of men
" on board the large schooner in Lake Champlain
" from twelve to thirty."

Upon my return to the fort, I received orders
from my Lord Loudoun to wait upon Col. Burton,
of the 48th regiment, for instructions, he being then
posted at Saratoga. By him I was ordered to re-
turn to my company at Fort William-Henry, and
march them to the South Bay, thence east to the
Wood Creek, then to cross it southerly, opposite
to Saratoga, and return and make my report to him.

Im

In this tour we apprehended four deserters from Otway's regiment, who were going to the enemy, and whom I sent back to Fort Edward, with a part of my detachment, under the command of Lieutenant Stark, and proceeded with the remainder to compleat my orders, after which I returned to Saratoga to make my report.

There I met my brother Capt. Richard Rogers with his company, he being ordered back from Mohock river, to join me with the remainder of the Stockbridge Indians; and I marched both companies to Fort Edward, where I was ordered to form an encampment. A part of the Indian company were sent out to the east-side of Lake Champlain to alarm the enemy at Ticonderoga, whilst I, with a detachment of my own, and Capt. Richard Rogers's company, was ordered on another party down Lake George, in whale-boats, and the remainder of the companies were employed in reconnoitering round the encampment, and also served as flankers to the parties that guarded provisions to Lake George. Capt. Jacob, who commanded the Indian party before-mentioned, returned two days before me with four French scalps, which they took opposite to Ticonderoga on the east-side.

Sept. 7, 1756. Agreeable to orders, I this day embarked on Lake George, with a party of fourteen

ended four deserters from
were going to the enemy,
Fort Edward, with a part
the command of Lieute-
d with the remainder to
which I returned to Sa-

er Capt. Richard Rogers
eing ordered back from
e with the remainder of
and I marched both com-
where I was ordered to
part of the Indian com-
east-side of Lake Cham-
at Ticonderoga, whilst I,
own, and Capt. Richard
ordered on another party
whale-boats, and the re-
were employed in recon-
mpment, and also served
hat guarded provisions to
ob, who commanded the
oned, returned two days
h scalps, which they took
on the east-side.

able to orders, I this day
ge, with a party of four-
teen

teen men in a whale-boat, which we landed, and
concealed the evening following, on the east shore,
about four miles south of the French advance guard.
Here I divided my party, taking seven men with me
leaving the remainder in charge of Mr. Chalmer (a
volunteer sent me by Sir John Sinclair) with orders,
upon his discovering the enemy's boats going up the
lake, &c. to make the best of his way with the in-
telligence to Fort William-Henry.

I was the 9th current within half a mile of Ti-
conderoga fort, where I endeavoured to reconnoi-
tre the enemy's works and strength. They were
engaged in raising the walls of the fort, and had
erected a large block-house near the south-east
corner of the fort, with ports in it for cannon. East
from the block-house was a battery, which I ima-
gined commanded the lake. I discovered five hou-
ses south of the fort close to the water-side, and 160
tents south-west of the fort, and twenty-seven bat-
toes hauled upon the beach.

Next morning, with one private, I went to view
the falls betwixt Lake Champlain and Lake George
(where I had heard the explosion of several guns
the evening before and had at that time sent Serjeant
Henry to discover the reason of it) leaving the re-
mainder of my party in charge of Mr. Gibbs, ano-
ther volunteer, to wait our return. Serjeant Henry
followed

followed soon after me, and reported, " that the
 " French were building a small fort at the head of
 " the falls on the east-side of the lake; that he also
 " discovered their guard to the westward, and ima-
 " gined both consisted of 500 men." I returned,
 after finding the French were engaged in building
 a saw-mill at the lower end of the falls, and found
 my boats with provisions left, as I suppose, by Mr.
 Chalmer and his party, whom I waited for till
 seven o'clock next day; but he not returning, and
 I judging from their tracks that they were returned
 to Fort William-Henry, we likewise began our
 return, and arrived safe the 11th of September,
 where I found Mr. Chalmer and the party left
 with him, he having punctually obeyed the orders
 given him above. Upon my return, I communi-
 cated my observations upon the Lakes George and
 Champlain to my Lord Loudoun, giving him as just
 a description as I could of their situation.

September 24, General Abercrombie issued out
 orders, that three commissioned officers of the
 rangers, with 20 privates each, should reconnoitre
 the Wood Creek, South Bay and Ticonderoga;
 and these were alternately sent out, so that a conti-
 nual scout was kept up for a considerable time.

October 22, 1756. The greatest part of the
 army was now at Fort-Edward, under the com-
 mand

reported, " that the
all fort at the head of
the lake ; that he also
he westward, and ima-
no men." I returned,
e engaged in building
of the falls, and found
as I suppose, by Mr.
hom I waited for till
he not returning, and
at they were returned
e likewise began our
11th of September,
er and the party left
ally obeyed the orders
y return, I communi-
the Lakes George and
oun, giving him as just
eir situation.

Abercrombie issued out
ioned officers of the
h, should reconnoitre
ay and Ticonderoga ;
at out, so that a conti-
considerable time.

the greatest part of the
ward, under the com-
mand:

mand of General Abercrombie, and Lord Lou-
doun arriving about this time with the remainder, it
was generally expected that the army would cross
the lake, and endeavour to reduce the French forts,
notwithstanding the season was so far advanced ; but
his Lordship taking into consideration the probab-
ility that those lakes would freeze (which they gen-
erally do in the month of December) in which case
no supplies could be had from, nor any communi-
cation kept up with Fort William-Henry ; he de-
termined to desist from this design, and contented
himself with keeping the field till Mons. Montcalm
retired to winter-quarters, and accordingly sought
all opportunities to learn his situation and move-
ments.

Agreeable to orders from his Lordship, I this day
embarked in two whale-boats, with a party of twen-
ty men, upon Lake George, with an intent to bring
a prisoner from Ticonderoga. We passed the
Narrows twenty miles from our embarkation, when
Capt. Shephard (who was made a captive in August
last and carried to Canada) hailed our boat ; I knew
his voice, and took him on board with three other
men, one of whom was taken with him. He re-
ported, that he left Canada fifteen days before. I
went on my course till the 27th, towards Caril-
lon, and landed that night on the west-side of the
lake, concealed our boats, and travelled by land to
within

within a mile of the fort. I kept spies out the day after to improve any opportunity that might offer, and the next day sent them still nearer, but to no good purpose: I at length discovered two men centries to the piquet guard of the French army, one of which was posted on the road that leads from the fort to the woods: I took five of my party, and marched directly down the road in the middle of the day, till we were challenged by the centry. I answered in French, signifying that we were friends; the centinel was thereby deceived, till I came close to him, when perceiving his mistake, in great surprize he called, *Qui etes vous?* I answered Rogers, and led him from his post in great haste, cutting his breeches and coat from him, that he might march with the greater ease and expedition. With this prisoner we arrived at Fort William-Henry, Oct. 31, 1756. Upon examination, he reported, " That he belonged to the regiment of Languedoc: that he left Brest last April was a twelve-month, and had served since at Lake Champlain, Crown Point, and Carillon, was last year with General Dieskau in the battle at Fort William-Henry: that they lost in that engagement of regulars, Canadians, and Indians, a great number: that at Carillon were at this time mounted thirty-six pieces of cannon, viz. twelve eighteen pounders, fifteen twelve pounders, and nine eight pounders, that at Crown Point were

" eighteen

I kept spies out the day
 opportunity that might offer,
 them still nearer, but to no
 length discovered two men
 forward of the French army,
 on the road that leads
 : I took five of my par-
 down the road in the mid-
 were challenged by the cen-
 , signifying that we were
 as thereby deceived, till I
 n perceiving his mistake,
 , *Qui êtes vous ?* I answer-
 a from his post in great
 nes and coat from him;
 with the greater ease and
 sifoner we arrived at Fort
 1756. Upon examination,
 he belonged to the regi-
 that he left Brest last Au-
 th, and had served since
 Crown Point, and Carillon,
 general Dieskau in the battle
 y: that they lost in that en-
 Canadians, and Indians, a
 Carillon were at this time
 ces of cannon, viz. twelve
 een twelve pounders, and
 that at Crown Point were
 " eighteen.

" eighteen pieces, the largest of which were eigh-
 " teen pounders : that *Monf. Montcalm's* forces
 " this year at Carillon were 3000 regulars, and 2000
 " Canadians and Indians : that *Montcalm* himself
 " was drawn off with one batallion, and that the for-
 " ces then in that neighbourhood consisted of five ba-
 " tallions and about 800 Canadians : that the Indi-
 " ans were all gone off, 200 of whom talked
 " of returning to spend the winter at Carillon: that
 " the advanced guard on the west-side above the
 " falls were all drawn in, and that on the east con-
 " sisted of 600 men, who were to decamp the 1st
 " of November : that they had a camp of five bat-
 " allions and sixty Canadians, about half a league
 " from Carillon, and that the rest of the army
 " were under the fort : that they had barracks suffi-
 " cient for 500 men, which he understood were
 " to quarter there: that they had one schooner and
 " 200 battoes on on Lake Champlain, and but five
 " or six on Lake George : that *Monf. the Chevalier*
 " *de Levi* commanded in *Monf. Montcalm's* ab-
 " sence, and that the Canadians were commanded
 " by *Messieurs Le Corn* and *Columbie* : that when
 " *Monf. Montcalm* went off, he said he had done
 " enough for this year, and would take Fort Will-
 " iam Henry early in the spring; that the French
 " had taken four of Captain Rogers's whale-boats
 " in lake Champlain: that when he was taken pri-
 " soner, he imagined himself to be about a gun-shot
 " and

" and half from the fort, and that the French camp
" was pretty healthy."

From this time we were constantly employed in patrolling the woods about Fort Edward till the 19th of November 1756, when I had his Lordship's orders to take another excursion down the Lake. Captain Abercrombie, Aid-de-camp and nephew to General Abercrombie, did me the honour to accompany me ; but nothing material being in our power to effect, except taking a view of the fort and works of the enemy at Ticonderoga, we returned safe to Fort Edward the 25th in the evening.

About this time his Lordship drew off the main body of the troops from Fort Edward to be quartered at Albany and New York.

Both armies being now retired to winter-quarters, nothing material happened to the end of this year. The rangers were stationed at the Forts William-Henry and Edward, to which also two new companies of rangers were sent this fall, commanded by Captain Spikeman and Captain Hobbs, in one of which my brother James Rogers was appointed an Ensign.

These

[]
and that the French camp

constantly employed in
at Fort Edward till the
when I had his Lord-
er excursion down the
bie, Aid-de-camp and
rombie, did me the ho-
ut nothing material be-
except taking a view of
enemy at Ticonderoga,
Edward the 25th in the

rdship drew off the main
Fort Edward to be quar-
York.

retired to winter-quar-
happened to the end of
ere stationed at the Forts
ard, to which also two
were sent this fall, com-
man and Captain Hobbs,
er James Rogers was ap-

These

[35]

These two companies were stationed at Fort William-Henry, mine and my brother Richard's at Fort Edward.

Captain Richard Rogers had leave go into New England for recruits to complete our two companies. He this winter waited upon the government of Boston, to obtain pay for our services the winter 1755 before-mentioned, but could obtain none, notwithstanding Lord Loudoun, who was then at Boston, generously supported and enforced our solicitations with his interest.

January 15, 1757. Agreeable to orders from the commanding officer at Fort Edward, I this day marched with my own Lieutenant Mr. Stark, Ensign Page of Captain Richard Rogers's company, and fifty privates of said companies, to Fort William-Henry, where we were employed in providing provisions, snow-shoes, &c. till the 17th, when being joined by Captain Spikeman, Lieutenant Kennedy and Ensign Brewer of his company, and fourteen of their men, together with Ensign James Rogers, and fourteen men of Captain Hobbs's company, and Mr. Baker, a volunteer of the 44th regiment of foot, we began our march on the ice down Lake George, and at night encamped on the east-side of the First Narrows. The next morning, finding that some of the detachment had hurt themselves

themselves in the march the day before, as many were dismissed to return to the fort, as reduced our party to seventy-four mén, officers included.

The 18th we marched twelve miles down the lake, and encamped on the west-side of it.

The 19th we marched three miles from our encampment further down the lake, and then took the land, and, upon snow-shoes, travelled north-west about eight miles from our landing, and three from the lake, where we encamped.

The 20th we marched north-by-east the whole day, and at night encamped on the western side, opposite to, and about three miles distant from lake Champlain.

The 21st we marched east, till we came to the lake, about mid-way between Crown Point and Ticonderoga, and immediately discovered a sled going from the latter to the former. I ordered Lieutenant Stark, with twenty men to head the sled, while I, with a party, marched the other way to prevent its retreating back again, leaving Captain Spikeman in the center with the remainder. I soon discovered eight or ten sleds more following down the lake, and endeavoured to give Mr. Stark intelligence of it before he fellied on the lake
and

the day before, as many
the fort, as reduced our
officers included.

twelve miles down the
west-side of it.

three miles from our
on the lake, and then
in snow-shoes, travelled
from our landing, and
we encamped.

north-by-east the whole
ed on the western side,
e miles distant from lake

east, till we came to the
ween Crown Point and
diately discovered a sled
former. I ordered Lieu-
ty men to head the sled,
marched the other way to
ack again, leaving Cap-
nter with the remainder.
r ten sleds more follow-
endeavoured to give Mr.
fore he sallied on the lake
and

and discovered himself to them, but could not.
They all hastily returned towards Ticonderoga.
We pursued them, and took seven prisoners, three
sleds, and six horses; the remainder made their
escape. We examined the captives separately,
who reported, " That 200 Canadians and 45 Indians
" were just arrived at Ticonderoga, and were to
" be reinforced that evening, or next morning,
" by fifty Indians more from Crown Point: that
" there were 600 regular troops at that fortress,
" and 350 at Ticonderoga, where they soon
" expected a large number of troops, who in the
" spring were to besiege our forts: that they had
" large magazines of provisions in their forts,
" and that the above-mentioned party were well
" equipped, and in a condition to march upon a-
" ny emergency at the least notice, and were de-
" signed soon to way-lay and distress our convoys
" between the forts."

From this account of things, and knowing that
those who escaped would give early notice of us at
Ticonderoga, I concluded it best to return; and
ordered the party, with the utmost expedition, to
march to the fires we had kindled the night before,
and prepare for a battle, if it should be offered, by
drying our guns, it being a rainy day, which we ef-
fected; and then marched in a single file, myself
and Lieutenant Kennedy in the front, Lieutenant
Stark

Stark in the rear, and Captain Spikeman in the center, Ensigns Page and Rogers were between the front and center, and Ensign Brewer between the center and rear, Serjeant Walker having the command of a rear-guard. In this manner we advanced half a mile, or thereabouts, over broken ground, when passing a valley of about fifteen rods breadth, the front having reached the summit of a hill on the west-side of it; the enemy, who had here drawn up in the form of a half-moon, with a design, as we supposed, to surround us, saluted us with a volley of about 200 shot, at the distance of about five yards from the nearest or front, and thirty from the rear of their party. This fire was about two o'clock in the afternoon, and proved fatal to Lieutenant Kennedy, and Mr Gardner, a volunteer in my company, and wounded me and several others; myself, however, but slightly in the head. We immediately returned their fire. I then ordered my men to the opposite hill, where I supposed Lieutenant Stark and Ensign Brewer had made a stand with forty men to cover us, in case we were obliged to retreat. We were closely pursued, and Capt. Spikeman, with several of the party, were killed, and others made prisoners. My people, however, beat them back by a brisk fire from the hill, which gave us an opportunity to ascend, and post ourselves to advantage. After which I ordered Lieutenant Stark and

ptain Spikeman in the
Rogers were between
Ensign Brewer between
erjeant Walker having
-guard. In this manner
, or thereabouts, over
sing a valley of about
front having reached the
est-side of it; the enemy,
in the form of a half-
we supposed, to surround
olley of about 200 shot,
ve yards from the near-
from the rear of their
ut two o'clock in the af-
t to Lieutenant Kennedy,
teer in my company, and
thers; myself, however,
We immediately returned
my men to the opposite
Lieutenant Stark and En-
stand with forty men to
obliged to retreat. We
nd Capt. Spikeman, with
e killed, and others made
however, beat them back
hill, which gave us an
and post ourselves to
ordered Lieutenant Stark
and

[59]

and Mr. Baker in the center, with Ensign Rogers,
Serjeants Walter and Phillips, with a party, being
a reserve, to prevent our being flanked, and watch
the motions of the enemy. Soon after we had thus
formed ourselves for battle, the enemy attempted
to flank us on the right, but the above reserve
bravely attacked them, and giving them the first
fire very briskly, it stopped several from retreating
to the main body. The enemy then pushed us
closely in the front; but having the advantage of
the ground, and being sheltered by large trees, we
maintained a continual fire upon them, which
killed several, and obliged the rest to retire to
their main body. They then attempted to flank
us again, but were again met by our reserved party,
and repulsed. Mr. Baker about this time was killed.
We maintained a pretty constant fire on both
sides, till the darkness prevented our seeing each
other, and about sun-set I received a ball thro' my
hand and wrist, which disabled me from loading my
gun. I however found means to keep my people
from being intimidated by this accident; they gal-
lantly kept their advantageous situation, till the
fire ceased on both sides. The enemy, during the
action, used many arts and stratagems to induce
us to submit, sometimes threatening us with seve-
rity if we refused, assuring us that they every mo-
ment expected a large reinforcement, which should
cut us to pieces without mercy: at other times
C flatterring

flattering and cajoling us, declaring it was a pity so many brave men should be lost; that we should, upon our surrender, be treated with the greatest compassion and kindness; calling me by name: they gave me the strongest assurances of their esteem and friendship that words could do; but no one being dismayed by their menaces, or flattered by fair promises, we told them our numbers were sufficient, and that we were determined to keep our ground as long as there were two left to stand by each other.

After the action, in which we had a great number so severely wounded that they could not travel without assistance, and our ammunition being nearly expended, and considering that we were near to Ticonderoga, from whence the enemy might easily make a descent, and overpower us by numbers, I thought it expedient to take the advantage of the night to retreat, and gave orders accordingly; and the next morning arrived at Lake George, about six miles south of the French advanced guard, from whence I dispatched Lieutenant Stark with two men to Fort William Henry, to procure conveyances for our wounded men thither; and the next morning we were met by a party of fifteen men and a sled, under the command of Lieutenant Buckley, of Hobbs's company of Rangers, at the first narrows at Lake George.

Our

))
declaring it was a pity
lost; that we should,
reated with the greatest
calling me by names;
est assurances of their
words could do; but
eir menaces, or flattered
them our numbers were
ere determined to keep
e were two left to stand

ch we had a great num-
that they could not tra-
our ammunition being
nsidering that we were
om whence the enemy
t, and overpower us by
expedient to take the
o retreat, and gave or-
next morning arrived at
lles south of the French
ence I dispatched Lieu-
n to Fort William Hen-
es for our wounded men
ning we were met by a
a sled, under the com-
ley, of Hobbs's company
arrows at Lake George.
Our

(41)

Our whole party, which now consisted of only
forty-eight effective, and six wounded men, arri-
ved at Fort William Henry the same evening, be-
ing the 23d of January 1757.

The nearest computation we could make of the
number which attacked us, was, that it consisted
of about 250 French and Indians; and we after-
wards had an account from the enemy, that their
loss in this action, of those killed, and who after-
wards died of their wounds, amounted to 116 men.

Both the officers and soldiers I had the honour to
command, who survived the first onset, behaved
with the most undaunted bravery and resolution,
and seemed to vie with each other in their respec-
tive stations who should excel.

C 2

The

The following is the Return which was made of the Killed, Wounded, and Missing, in the above action.

Company	Name	Killed	Wounded	Missing	Returned
Capt. Rogers's Company	Captain Robert Rogers	—	—	—	—
	Mr. Baker, Volunteer	Killed	—	—	—
	Mr. Gardner, ditto	ditto	—	—	—
	Thomas Henson	ditto	—	—	—
	Serjeant Martin	—	—	—	—
	Thomas Burnside	—	—	—	—
	Serjeant Henry	—	—	missing	—
	William Morris	—	—	ditto	—
Capt. Rogers's Co.	John Morrison	—	—	ditto	—
	Joseph Stephens	ditto	—	—	—
	Benjamin Woodall	—	ditto	—	—
	David Kemble	—	ditto	—	—
	Ensign Caleb Page	ditto	—	—	—
Capt. Hulse's Co.	David Page	—	—	ditto	—
	Serjeant Jon. Howard	ditto	—	—	—
	Phineas Kemp	ditto	—	—	—
	John Edmonds	ditto	—	—	—
	Thomas Farmer	ditto	—	—	—
Capt. Spikeman's Co.	Emanuel Lapartiquer	ditto	—	—	—
	Capt. Spikeman	ditto	—	—	—
	Lieut. Kennedy	ditto	—	—	—
	Robert Avery	ditto	—	—	—
	Thomas Brown	—	—	ditto	—
	Samuel Fisk	ditto	—	—	—
	Serjeant Moore	—	—	—	ditto
	John Cahall	—	—	—	ditto
Total,		14	6	6	

N. B. Those returned as missing, we afterwards found had been taken prisoners by the enemy.

Having

Killed		was no
ditto		
ditto		
		no
	missing	ditto
	ditto	
ditto	ditto	
ditto	ditto	
ditto		ditto
ditto		
ditto		
ditto		
ditto		
ditto	ditto	
ditto		
		ditto
		ditto
14	6	8

Having

Albany, Feb. 6, 1757.

" The General received your letter that was sent by Major Sparks, and returns you and your men thanks for their behaviour, and has recommended both you and them strongly to my Lord Loudoun, as also that they have payment for the prisoners they took. Upon receiving an account of your skilfull descent an express to Boston, and, by the said opportunity, recommended, for Spikeman's company, your brother * for a Lieutenant. We expect the express back in a day or two, by whom I dare say, we shall have my Lord's approbation of the Rangers. Please to send me the names of the officers you would recommend for your own

• James Rogers.

company, and also to fill up the vacancies in the others; as I am certain you have the good of the service at heart, your recommendation will be paid great regard to. I yesterday received your's of the 30th of January. You cannot imagine how all ranks of people here are pleased with your conduct, and your men's behaviour; for my part, it is no more than I expected: I was so pleased with their appearance when I was out with them, that I took it for granted they would behave well whenever they met the enemy. When I returned I reported them as such, and am glad they have answered my expectation.

" I am heartily sorry for Spikeman and Kennedy, who I imagined would have turned out well, as likewise for the men you have lost; but it is impossible to play at bowls without meeting with rubs. We must try to revenge the loss of them. There is few people that will believe it; but upon honour, I could be glad to have been with you, that I might have learned the manner of fighting in this country. The chance of being shot is all stuff, and King William's opinion and principle is much the best for a soldier, viz. "that every bullet has its billet," and that "it is allotted how every man shall die;" so that I am certain that every one will agree, that it is better to die with the reputation of a brave man, fighting for his country in a good cause, than either shamefully running away to preserve
one's

vacancies in the others;
 good of the service at
 will be paid great re-
 your's of the 30th of
 now all ranks of people
 and your men be-
 more than I expected:
 pearance when I was
 it for granted they
 they met the enemy.
 them as such, and am
 expectation.

pikeman and Kenne-
 ve turned out well, as
 lost; but it is impos-
 meeting with rubs.
 loss of them. There
 e it; but upon ho-
 been with you, that
 manner of fighting in
 being shot is all stuff,
 and principle is much
 that every bullet has
 dotted how every man
 ain that every one will
 with the reputation of
 country in a good cause,
 ing away to preserve
 one's

one's life, or lingering out an old age, and dying in
 one's bed, without having done his country or his
 King any service.

"The histories of this country, particularly, are
 full of the unheard-of cruelties committed by the
 French, and the Indians, by their instigation, which
 I think every brave man ought to do his utmost to
 humble that haughty nation, or reduce their bounds
 of conquest in this country to a narrow limit. As
 soon as General Abercrombie receives my Lord's
 instructions in regard to the Rangers, I shall send
 you notice of it, in the interim. I hope you'll get
 the better of your wound. If I can be of any ser-
 vice to you or your men as long as they continue
 to behave so well, you may command

Your most humble servant,

To Capt.
 Robert Rogers.

James Abercrombie,
 Aid de Camp."

My wound growing worse, I was obliged to re-
 pair to Albany for better assistance, and there re-
 ceived the following instructions from General
 Abercrombie, viz.

Instructions for Capt. ROBERT ROGERS.

"His Excellency the Earl of Loudoun having
 given authority to me to augment the company of
 Rangers under your command, to 100 men
 each, viz.

C 4

One

One Captain,
Two Lieutenants,
One Ensign, } upon an English pay ;

Four Serjeants at 4s. each. New York currency ;
100 private men, at 2s. and 6d. each ditto per day ;
“ And whereas there are some private men of your company serving at present upon higher pay than the above establishment, you are at liberty to discharge them, in case they refuse to serve at the said establishment, as soon as you have other men to replace them. If your men agree to remain with you and serve upon the above establishment, you may assure them they will be taken notice of, and be first provided for ; each man to be allowed ten dollars bounty-money, and to find their own cloaths, arms, and blankets, and to sign a paper subjecting themselves to the rules and articles of war, and to serve during the war. You are to enlist no vagrants, but such as you and your officers are acquainted with, and who are every way qualified for the duty of Rangers ; and you and your officers are to use your best endeavours to complete your companies as soon as possible, and bring them to Fort Edward.

James Abercrombie,
Major General.”

About this time I again wrote to his Lordship, earnestly soliciting his friendly interposition and assistance,

upon an English pay ;

h. New York currency ;
and 6d. each ditto per day ;
some private men of your
ent upon higher pay than
you are at liberty to dis-
refuse to serve at the said
you have other men to re-
men agree to remain with
above establishment, you
be taken notice of, and be
man to be allowed ten dol-
to find their own cloaths,
to sign a paper subjecting
nd articles of war, and to
ou are to enlist no vagrants ;
our officers are acquainted
way qualified for the duty
nd your officers are to use
complete your companies
ring them to Fort Edward.

James Abercrombie,
Major General."

in wrote to his Lordship,
tendly interposition and as-
sistance,

sistance, to obtain from the government here, an
order for payment of what was due to me and my
men, for our respective services during the winter
1755 ; but if that could not be obtained, that he
would be pleased to direct me what method to take
for the recovery thereof. Whereto his Lordship
replied, that as these services were antecedent to
his command here, it was not in his power to re-
ward them. General Amherst, afterwards, on a like
application, gave me much the same answer.

These applications not being attended with any
success, and suits of law being afterwards commen-
ced against me, by, and on the behalf of those who
served under me in that campaign, and verdicts ob-
tained in their favour, I was not only obliged to
answer their several demands, to the amount of
£. 828 : 3 : 3 sterling, which I paid out of my pri-
vate fortune, but also a considerable sum for law-
charges, exclusive of what I ought to have receiv-
ed for my own services during that severe season.
But for all which I have not at any time since re-
ceived one shilling consideration.

In the same letter I likewise informed his Lord-
ship of the death of Capt. Hobbs of the Rangers
who died a few days before, and recommended
Lieutenant Bulkley of the same company, as a pro-
per person to succeed him in that command.

C 5

March

March 5, I was taken ill with the small-pox, and not able to leave my room till the 15th of April following, during which time my officers were recruiting, agreeable to his Lordship's instructions. Not long after I received the following letter from Capt. Abercrombie.

Sir,

New York, April 22, 1757.

" As there is another ranging company sent up to Albany, with orders to proceed to the forts, you will acquaint Colonel Gage, that it is my Lord Loudoun's orders, that the two companies at Fort William-Henry, and your own from Fort Edward, come down immediately to Albany, to be ready to embark for this place. Shew this letter to Colonel Gage, that he may acquaint Colonel Monro of his Lordship's orders, and that quarters may be provided for your companies in the houses about Albany. You will take particular care that the companies have provided themselves with all necessaries, and see that they are complete and good men. Since his Lordship has put it in your charge, I hope you will be very diligent in executing the trust, for, upon a review of the men, if any are found insufficient for the service, the blame will be laid upon you. If the officers of this ranging company that is gone up, are not acquainted with the woods about Fort William-Henry, your brother must send some

ill with the small-pox,
room till the 15th of
which time my officers
to his Lordship's instruc-
ved the following letter

ew York, April 22, 1757.

anging company sent up
proceed to the forts, you
ge, that it is my Lord
e two companies at Fort
own from Fort Edward,
o Albany, to be ready to
new this letter to Colonel
int Colonel Monro of his
t quarters may be provid-
the houses about Albany.
care that the companies
with all necessaries, and
e and good men. Since
your charge, I hope you
executing the trust, for,
n, if any are found insuffi-
e blame will be laid upon
this ranging company that
ainted with the woods a-
y, your brother must send
some

[49.]

some officers and men of his company along with
them, to let them know the different scouts.

I am, Sir,

Your most humble servant,

To Capt.
Robert Rogers,
at Albany.

James Abercrombie,
Aid de Camp."

Capt. Richard Rogers, with his own, and the
new company of Rangers before-mentioned, which
was raised in the Jerseys, and commanded by Capt.
Burgin, being left at Fort William-Henry, my own
company from Fort-Edward, and Capt. Stark's
and Capt. Bulkeley's from Fort William-Henry,
agreeable to the above instructions, marched down
to Albany, and from thence embarked for New
York, where we were joined by another new-raised
company of Rangers, under the command of Capt.
Shephard from New Hampshire, and after some
small stay there, re-embarked on board a transport,
and left Sandy Hook on the 20th of June, with a
fleet of near an hundred sail, bound to Halifax,
where we soon arrived, and, according to orders,
I encamped on the Dartmouth side of the harbour,
while the army lay encamped on the Halifax-side.
The Rangers were here employed in various ser-
vices.

On

On July 2d, by orders, I commanded a party to Lawrence Town, and from thence to Schitzcook; some were left there to cut and make up hay in the meadows, for the horses intended to be used in an expedition to Louisburg; others covered the hay-makers, and others were dispatched on scouts, to make discoveries; in one of which two deserters from the 45th regiment were seized and brought in.

About the latter end of this month forty Rangers were sent across the isthmus of Nova Scotia, to the settlements on the Bay of Fundy, and a party down to the north-west arm, to scour the woods for deserters, &c. and brought in several, both from the army and navy.

About this time Admiral Holbourn arrived with a fleet from England, with several regiments of regular troops on board, which were landed, and likewise encamped at Halifax, upon which all scouting parties were called in; but certain intelligence being received that a French fleet of superior force had actually arrived at Louisburg, the intended expedition against that place was laid aside, and thereupon the Rangers were remanded back to the western frontier.

Great numbers of the Rangers having been carried off this summer by the small-pox, I sent several of

5]
I commanded a party to
thence to Schitzcook ;
and make up hay in the
intended to be used in an
others covered the hay-
dispatched on scouts, to
e of which two defenders
were seized and brought in.

this month forty Rangers
us of Nova Scotia, to the
Fundy, and a party down
scour the woods for defen-
se feyeral, both from the
one destroyed the other
Holbourn arrived with
th several regiments of re-
which were landed, and like-
g, upon which all scouting
t certain intelligence being
best of superior force had
burg, the intended expedi-
as laid aside, and thereupon
ended back to the western

Rangers having been car-
the small-pox, I sent several
of

of my officers by his Lordship's command, to re-
cruit in New Hampshire, and the Massachuset's
provinces, with orders to join me at Albany. I
afterwards embarked with the Rangers under my
command, on board the fleet which carried the re-
gular troops to New York, and from thence pro-
ceeded in small vessels up Hudson's River to Albany,
where I was soon after joined by the new-raised
recruits.

I then proceeded to Fort Edward, which was the
only remaining cover to the northern frontiers of
New York, and the more eastern provinces, Fort
William-Henry * having been taken by the French,
under the command of Mons. Montcalm, the August
before. General Webb was then commanding offi-
cer at Fort Edward, and by his orders we were
continually employed in patrolling the woods be-
tween this fort and Ticonderoga. In one of these
parties, my Lord Howe did us the honour to ac-
pany us, being fond, as he expressed himself, to
learn our method of marching, ambushing, retreat-
ing,

* My brother Captain Richard Rogers died with the small-
pox a few days before this fort was besieged; but such was the
cruelty and rage of the enemy after their conquest, that they
dug him up out of his grave, and scalped him. In consequence
of the articles of capitulation at the surrender of this fort, the
two companies of Rangers there were disbanded, and dismissed
the service.

ing, &c. and, upon our return, expressed his good opinion of us very generously.

About this time Lord Loudoun sent the following volunteers in the regular troops, to be trained to the ranging, or wood-service, under my command and inspection; with particular orders to me to instruct them to the utmost of my power in the ranging-discipline, our methods of marching, retreating, ambushing, fighting, &c. that they might be the better qualified for any future services against the enemy we had to contend with, desiring me to take particular notice of each one's behaviour, and to recommend them according to their deserts, viz.

Walter Crofton.	}	of the 4th regiment of
Mr. Lyshat.		foot.
Mr. Roberts.		

Charles Humbles.	}	of the 22d ditto.
Richard Edlington.		
Andrew Crawley.		
Thomas-Millet.		

John Wilcox.	}	of the 27th ditto.
John Wrightson.		
Michael Kent.		
Mr. Monfel.		
Francis Creed.		

Alexander

turn, expressed his good
fly.

oudoun sent the follow-
troops, to be trained to
ce, under my command
cular orders to me to in-
t of my power in the
thods of marching, re-
ng, &c. that they might
ny future services against
end with, desiring me to
ch one's behaviour, and
ding to their deserts, viz.

of the 4th regiment of:
foot.

of the 22d ditto.

of the 27th ditto.

Alexander

[53]

Alexander Robertson
William Frazier
John Graham
Andrew Rofs
William Frazier, jun.
Archibald Campbell
Arch. Campbell, jun.
Auguf. Campbell
Charles Menzies
John Robertson.

of the 42d ditto.

Will. Ervin, or Irwin
Thomas Drought
William Drought
Francis Carruthers
John Clarke.

of the 44th ditto.

Walter Paterfon
Mr. Nicholson
Richard Boyce
Charles Perry.

of the 48th ditto.

Mr. Christopher
Mr. Still
Mr. Hamilton
Mr. Young.

of the 55th ditto.

Allen

Allen Grant Jonathan M'Dongal Mr. Frisborough	}	of the second battalion of Royal Americans.
---	---	--

Nicholas Ward James Hill	}	of the 3d ditto.
-----------------------------	---	------------------

John Schlofer George Wardoman Francis Barnard Engelbertus Horst Ericke Reinhault Andrew Wackerberg Luhaimfab Dekeser Donald M'Bean Henry Ven Bebbber John Boujour	}	of the 4th ditto.
--	---	-------------------

Edward Crafton James Pottinger Simon Stephens Archibald M'Donald Hugh Sterling Mr. Bridge	}	Rangers.
--	---	----------

These volunteers I formed into a company by themselves, and took the more immediate command and management of them to myself; and for their benefit and instruction reduced into writing

]

of the second battalion
of Royal Americans.

of the 3d ditto.

of the 4th ditto.

Rangers.

med into a company by
more immediate com-
of them to myself; and
tion reduced into writ-
ting

ting the following rules or plan of discipline, which,
on various occasions, I had found by experience
to be necessary and advantageous, viz.

I. All Rangers are to be subject to the rules and
articles of war; to appear at roll-call every even-
ing on their own parade, equipped, each with a
firelock, sixty rounds of powder and ball, and a
hatchet, at which time an officer from each com-
pany is to inspect the same, to see they are in order,
so as to be ready on any emergency to march at a
minute's warning; and before they are dismissed,
the necessary guards are to be draughted, and scouts
for the next day appointed.

II. Whenever you are ordered out to the ene-
mies forts or frontiers for discoveries, if your num-
ber be small, march in a single file, keeping at
such a distance from each other as to prevent one
shot from killing two men, sending one man, or
more, forward, and the like on each side, at the
distance of twenty yards from the main body, if
the ground you march over will admit of it, to
give the signal to the officer of the approach of an
enemy, and of their number, &c

III. If you march over marshes or soft
ground, change your position, and march abreast
of each other to prevent the enemy from tracking
you

you (as they would do if you marched in a single file) till you get over such ground, and then resume your former order, and march till it is quite dark before you encamp, which do, if possible, on a piece of ground that may afford your sentries the advantage of seeing or hearing the enemy some considerable distance, keeping one half of your whole party awake alternately through the night.

IV. Some time before you come to the place you would reconnoitre, make a stand, and send one or two men in whom you can confide, to look out the best ground for making your observations.

V. If you have the good fortune to take any prisoners, keep them separate, till they are examined, and in your return take a different route from that in which you went out, that you may the better discover any party in your rear, and have an opportunity, if their strength be superior to yours, to alter your course, or disperse, as circumstances may require.

VI. If you march in a large body of three or four hundred, with a design to attack the enemy, divide your party into three columns, each headed by a proper officer, and let those columns march in single files, the columns to the right and left keeping at twenty yards distance or more from that

in a large body of three or
assign to attack the enemy,
three columns, each headed
and let those columns march
columns to the right and left
of distance or more from
that

that of the center, if the ground will admit, and let proper guards be kept in the front and rear, and suitable flanking parties at a due distance as before directed, with orders to halt on all eminences, to take a view of the surrounding ground, to prevent your being ambuscaded, and to notify the approach or retreat of the enemy, that proper dispositions may be made for attacking, defending, &c. And if the enemy approach in your front on level ground, form a front of your three columns or main body with the advanced guard, keeping out your flanking parties, as if you were marching under the command of trusty officers, to prevent the enemy from pressing hard on either of your wings, or surrounding you, which is the usual method of the savages, if their number will admit of it, and be careful likewise to support and strengthen your rear-guard.

VII. If you are obliged to receive the enemy's fire, fall, or squat down, till it is over, then rise and discharge them. If their main body is equal to yours, extend yourselves occasionally; but if superior, be careful to support and strengthen your flanking parties, to make them equal to theirs, that if possible you may repulse them to their main body, in which case push upon them with the greatest resolution with equal force in each flank and in the center, observing to keep at a due distance.

ance from each other, and advance from tree to tree, with one half of the party before the other ten or twelve yards. If the enemy push upon you, let your front fire and fall down, and then let your rear advance thro' them and do the like, by which time those who before were in front will be ready to discharge again, and repeat the same alternately, as occasion shall require; by this means you will keep up such a constant fire, that the enemy will not be able easily to break your order, or gain your ground.

VIII. If you oblige the enemy to retreat, be careful, in your pursuit of them, to keep out your flanking parties, and prevent them from gaining eminences, or rising grounds, in which case they would perhaps be able to rally and repulse you in their turn.

IX. If you are obliged to retreat, let the front of your whole party fire and fall back, till the rear hath done the same, making for the best ground you can; by this means you will oblige the enemy to pursue you, if they do it at all, in the face of a constant fire.

X. If the enemy is so superior that you are in danger of being surrounded by them, let the whole body disperse, and every one take a different road to

advance from tree to tree, and the party before the other enemy push upon you, fall down, and then let them pass, and do the like, by which means you will be in the front will be and repeat the same require; by this means constant fire, that the enemy will be obliged to break your order,

XI. If your rear is attacked, the main body and flankers must face about to the right and left, as occasion shall require, and form themselves to oppose the enemy, as before directed; and the same method must be observed, if attacked in either of your flanks, by which means you will always make a rear of one of your flank-guards.

XII. If you determine to rally after a retreat, in order to make a fresh stand against the enemy, by all means endeavour to do it on the most rising ground you come at, which will give you greatly the advantage in point of situation, and enable you to repulse superior numbers.

XIII. In general, when pushed upon by the enemy, reserve your fire till they approach very near, which will then put them into the greatest surprize

surprize and consternation, and give you an opportunity of rushing upon them with your hatchets and cutlasses to the better advantage.

XIV. When you encamp at night, fix your centries in such a manner as not to be relieved from the main body till morning, profound secrecy and silence being often of the last importance in these cases. Each centry therefore should consist of six men, two of whom must be constantly alert, and when relieved by their fellows, it should be done without noise; and in case those on duty see or hear any thing, which alarms them, they are not to speak, but one of them is silently to retreat, and acquaint the commanding officer thereof, that proper dispositions may be made; and all occasional centries should be fixed in like manner.

XV. At the first dawn of day, awake your whole detachment; that being the time when the savages chuse to fall upon their enemies, you should by all means be in readiness to receive them.

XVI. If the enemy should be discovered by your detachments in the morning, and their numbers are superior to yours, and a victory doubtful, you should not attack them till the evening, as then they will not know your numbers, and if you are

and give you an opportunity with your hatchet advantage.

At night, fix your centre not to be relieved from, g. profound secrecy and last importance in these should consist of fix be constantly alert, and how, it should be done those on duty see or arms them, they are not silently to retreat, and officer thereof, that provide ; and all occasional like manner.

At day, awake your being the time when the their enemies, you should to receive them.

should be discovered by morning, and their number and a victory doubtful, them till the evening, as your numbers, and if you are

are repulsed, your retreat will be favoured by the darkness of the night.

XVII. Before you leave your encampment, send out small parties to scout round it, to see if there be any appearance or track of an enemy that might have been near you during the night.

XVIII. When you stop for refreshment, choose some spring or rivulet if you can, and dispose your party so as not to be surprised, posting proper guards and sentries at a due distance, and let a small party waylay the path you came in, lest the enemy should be pursuing.

XIX. If, in your return, you have to cross rivers, avoid the usual fords as much as possible, lest the enemy should have discovered, and be there expecting you.

XX. If you have to pass by lakes, keep at some distance from the edge of the water, lest, in case of an ambuscade or an attack from the enemy, when in that situation, your retreat should be cut off.

XXI. If the enemy pursue your rear, take a circle till you come to your own tracks, and there form an ambush to receive them, and give them the first fire.

XXII.

XXII. When you return from a scout, and come near our forts, avoid the usual roads, and avenues thereto, lest the enemy should have headed you, and lay in ambush to receive you, when almost exhausted with fatigues.

XXIII. When you pursue any party that has been near our forts or encampments, follow not directly in their tracks, lest they should be discovered by their rear-guards, who, at such a time, would be most alert; but endeavour, by a different route, to head and meet them in some narrow pass, or lay in ambush to receive them when and where they least expect it.

XXIV. If you are to embark in canoes, battoes, or otherwise, by water, chuse the evening for the time of your embarkation, as you will then have the whole night before you, to pass undiscovered by any parties of the enemy; on hills, or other places, which command a prospect of the lake or river you are upon.

XXV. In paddling or rowing, give orders that the boat or canoe next the sternmost, wait for her, and the third for the second, and the fourth for the third, and so on, to prevent separation, and that you may be ready to assist each other on any emergency.

from a scout, and come
usual roads, and avenues
ould have headed you,
e you, when almost ex-

sue any party that has
campments, follow not
it they should be disco-
, who, at such a time,
ndeavour, by a different
em in some narrow pass,
e them when and where

embark in canoes, battoes,
use the evening for the
, as you will then have
ou, to pass undiscovered
my, on hills, or other
a prospect of the lake or

rowing, give orders that
effernmost, wait for her,
ond, and the fourth for
prevent separation, and
assist each other on any

XXVI

XXVI. Appoint one man in each boat to look out for fires, on the adjacent shores, from the numbers and size of which you may form some judgment of the number that kindled them, and whether you are able to attack them or not.

XXVII. If you find the enemy encamped near the banks of a river or lake, which you imagine they will attempt to cross for their security upon being attacked, leave a detachment of your party on the opposite shore to receive them, while, with the remainder, you surprize them, having them between you and the lake or river.

XXVIII. If you cannot satisfy yourself as to the enemy's number and strength, from their fire, &c. conceal your boats at some distance, and ascertain their number by a reconnoitring party, when they embark, or march, in the morning, marking the course they steer, &c. when you may pursue, ambush, and attack them, or let them pass, as prudence shall direct you. In general, however, that you may not be discovered by the enemy on the lakes and rivers at a great distance, it is safest to lay by, with your boats and party concealed all day, without noise or shew, and to pursue your intended route by night; and whether you go by land or water, give out parole and countersigns, in order to know one another in the dark,

D

dark, and likewise appoint a station for every man to repair to, in case of any accident that may separate you."

Such in general are the rules to be observed in the Ranging service; there are, however, a thousand occurrences and circumstances which may happen, that will make it necessary, in some measure, to depart from them, and to put other arts and stratagems in practice; in which cases every man's reason and judgment must be his guide, according to the particular situation and nature of things; and that he may do this to advantage, he should keep in mind a maxim never to be departed from by a commander, viz. to preserve a firmness and presence of mind on every occasion.

My Lord Loudoun about this time made a visit to Fort Edward, and after giving directions for quartering the army the approaching winter, left a strong garrison there under the command of Colonel Haviland, and returned to Albany. The Rangers * with the before-mentioned volunteers,

* Several of them were dismissed with an allowance of thirteen days pay to carry them home, being rendered unfit for immediate service by their past fatigues, and several officers were sent recruiting in order to have the companies completed by the opening of the spring.

int a station for every
se of any accident that

he rules to be observed
there are, however, a
d circumstances which
make it necessary, in
t from them, and to put
in practice; in which
and judgment must be his
particular situation and
that he may do this to
p in mind a maxim never
commander, viz. to pre-
ference of mind on every

about this time made a
and after giving directions
the approaching winter,
ere under the command
d returned to Albany. The
ore-mentioned volunteers,

were
nished with an allowance of thir-
me, being rendered unfit for im-
tation, and several officers were
the companies complete by the e-

were encamped and quartered in huts on an adja-
cent island in Hudson's River, and were sent out
on various scouts, in which my ill state of health
at this time would not permit me to accompany
them, till December 17, 1757, when, pursuant
to orders from Lieutenant Colonel Haviland,
commanding officer at Fort Edward, I march-
ed from thence with a party of 150 men to re-
connoitre Carillon, alias Ticonderoga, and if possi-
ble to take a prisoner. We marched six miles
and encamped, the snow being then about three
inches deep; and before morning it was fifteen:
we however pursued our route.

On the 18th in the morning, eight of my par-
ty being tired, returned to the fort; with the re-
mainder I marched nine miles further, and en-
camped on the east-side of Lake-George, near
the place where Mons. Montcalm landed his
troops when he besieged and took Fort William-
Henry, where I found some cannon-ball and shells,
which had been hid by the French, and made a
mark by which I might find them again.

The 19th we continued our march on the west-
side of the lake nine miles further, near the head
of the north-west bay.

So many of my party tired and return-

ed as reduced our number to 123 officers included, with whom I proceeded ten miles further, and encamped at night, ordering each man to leave a day's provisions there till our return.

The next day we marched ten miles further, and encamped near the great brook that runs into Lake George, eight miles from the French advanced guard.

The 23d we marched eight miles, and the 24th six more, and then halted within 600 yards of Carillon fort. Near the mills we discovered five Indian's tracks, that had marched that way the day before as we supposed, on a hunting party. On my march this day between the advanced guard and the fort, I appointed three places of rendezvous to repair to, in case of being broke in an action, and acquainted every officer and soldier that I should rally the party at the nearest post to the fort, and if broke there to retreat to the second, and at the third to make a stand till the darkness of the night would give us an opportunity to get off. Soon after I halted I formed an ambush on a road leading from the fort to the woods, with an advanced party of twenty men, and a rear-guard of fifteen. About eleven o'clock a serjeant of marines came from the fort up the road to my advanced party, who let him pass to the main body, where I made him prisoner.

Upon

1
o 123 officers included,
miles further, and en-
each man to leave a
return.

hed ten miles further,
at brook that runs into
from the French advan-

ht miles, and the 24th
within 600 yards of Caril-
discovered five Indian's
that way the day before
ng party. On my march
ced guard and the fort,
rendezvous to repair to
n action, and acquaint-
that I should rally the
to the fort, and if broke
ons, and at the third to
ess of the night would
et off. Soon after I halted
oad leading from the fort
vanced party of twenty
fifteen. About eleven
mes came from the fort up
party, who let him pass
I made him prisoner.
Upon

[67]

Upon examination, he reported, " that there were
" in the garrison 350 regulars, about fifty work-
" men, and but five Indians: that they had plen-
" ty of provisions, &c. and that twelve masons were
" constantly employed in blowing up rocks in the
" entrenchment, and a number of soldiers to assist
" them: that at Crown Point there were 150 sol-
" diers and fourteen Indians: that M^{ons}. Mont-
" calm was at Montreal: that 500 Ottawawas In-
" dians wintered in Canada, and that 500 Rangers
" were lately raised in Canada, each man having a
" double-barrelled fuzee, and put under an expe-
" rienced officer, well acquainted with the coun-
" try: that he did not know whether the French
" intended to attack any of the English forts this
" winter or not; but that they expected a great
" number of Indians as soon as the ice would bear
" them, in order to go down to the English forts;
" and that all the bakers in Carillon were employ-
" ed in baking biscuit for the scouts above-menti-
" oned."

About noon, a Frenchman, who had been hunt-
ing, came near my party in his return, when I or-
dered a party to pursue him to the edge of the clear-
ed ground, and take him prisoner, with this caution,
to shoot off a gun or two, and then retreat to the
main-body, in order to intice the enemy from their
fort;

fort ; which orders were punctually obeyed, but not one of them ventured out.

The last prisoner, on examination, gave much the same account as the other, but with this addition, " that he had heard the English intended to attack Ticonderoga, as soon as the lake was frozen so as to bear them."

When I found the French would not come out of the fort, we went about killing their cattle, and destroyed seventeen head, and set fire to the wood, which they had collected for the use of the garrison, and consumed five large piles ; the French shot off some cannon at the fires, but did us no harm. At eight o'clock at night I began my march homewards, and arrived at Fort Edward with my prisoners the 27th. In my return, I found at the north-end of Lake George, where the French had hid the boats they had taken at Fort William Henry, with a great number of cannon-balls ; but as the boats were under water we could not destroy them. Upon my return to Fort Edward, I received a letter from Captain Abercrombie, informing me that the Earl of Loudoun, who was then at New York, had thoughts of augmenting the Rangers, and had desired General Abercrombie to command me down to receive his directions. I accordingly prepared for my journey, and upon my arrival was received
by

]
punctually obeyed, but
out.

examination, gave much
er, but with this additi-
the English intended to at-
on as the lake was froze

ch would not come out
killing their cattle, and
and set fire to the wood,
for the use of the garrison,
siles; the French shot off
but did us no harm. At
egan my march home-
rt Edward with my pri-
rn, I found at the north-
re the French had hid the
ort William Henry, with
b-balls; but as the boats
d not destroy them. Up-
ward, I received a letter
e, informing me that the
s then at New York, had
the Rangers, and had de-
ie to command me down
I accordingly prepared
my arrival was received
by

[69]

by his Lordship in a very friendly manner; and, after much conversation upon the subject, he was pleased to inform me of his intentions of levying five additional companies of Rangers, desiring me to name the persons whom I thought fit for officers, and such as might be depended upon, to levy the men his Lordship desired; which I accordingly did, and then received from him the following instructions.

“ By his Excellency John Earl of Loudoun, Lord Machline and Tairnsean &c. &c. &c. one of the sixteen peers of Scotland, Governor and Captain General of Virginia, and Vice Admiral of the same, Colonel of the 13th Regiment of foot, Colonel in chief of the Royal American regiment, Major General and Commander in Chief of all his Majesty's forces, raised or to be raised in North-America :

“ Whereas I have this day thought proper to augment the Rangers with five additional companies, that is, four New England and one Indian company, to be forthwith raised and employed in his Majesty's service; and whereas I have an entire confidence in your skill and knowledge, of the men most fit for that service; I do therefore by these presents appoint you to raise such a number of non-commission officers and private men as will be necessary

D 4

cessary

necessary to compleat the said five companies, upon the following establishment, viz. each company to consist of one Captain, two Lieutenants, one Ensign, four Serjeants and 100 privates. The officers to have British pay, that is, the same as an officer of the like rank in his Majesty's regular forces; the Serjeants 4s. New York currency per day, and the private men 2s. 6d. currency per day. And the better to enable you to make this levy of men, you shall have one month's pay for each of the said five companies advanced to you; upon these conditions, that, out of the first warrants that shall hereafter be granted for the subsistence of these companies, shall be deducted the said month's pay now advanced. Your men to find their own arms, which must be such as upon examination, shall be found fit, and be approved of. They are likewise to provide themselves with good warm cloathing, which must be uniform in every company, and likewise with good warm blankets. And the company of Indians to be dressed in all respects in the true Indian fashion, and they are all to be subject to the rules and articles of war. You will forthwith acquaint the officers appointed to these companies, that they are immediately to set out on the recruiting service, and you will not fail to instruct them that they are not to enlist any man for a less term than one year, nor any but what are able-bodied, well acquainted with the woods, used to hunting,

and

and five companies, upon
viz. each company to
Lieutenants, one En-
to privates. The offi-
is, the same as an of-
Majesty's regular forces;
currency per day, and
currency per day. And the
to this levy of men, you
for each of the said five
upon these conditions,
is that shall hereafter be
of these companies,
month's pay now advan-
their own arms, which
mination, shall be found
they are likewise to pro-
warm cloathing, which
company, and likewise

And the company of
respects in the true In-
all to be subject to the
You will forthwith ac-
ted to these companies,
to set out on the recruit-
not fail to instruct them
any man for a less term
at what are able-bodied,
woods, used to hunting,
and

[71]

and every way qualified for the Ranging office.
You are also to observe that the number of men re-
quisite to compleat the said five companies, are all
to be at Fort Edward on or before the 15th day of
March next ensuing, and those that shall come by
the way of Albany are to be mustered there by the
officer commanding, as shall those who go strait to
Fort Edward by the officer commanding there.
Given under my hand, at New York, the 11th day
of January 1758.

LOUDBOURN.

By his Excellency's command,
To Capt.
Robert Rogers.

J. APPY."

In pursuance of the above instructions I immedi-
ately sent officers into the New England provinces,
where, by the assistance of my friends, the request-
ed augmentation of Rangers was quickly compleat-
ed, the whole five companies being ready for service
by the 4th of March.

Four of these companies were sent to Louisburg to
join General Amherst, and one joined the corps un-
der my command; and tho' I was at the whole ex-
pence of raising the five companies, I never got the
least allowance for it, and one of the captains dy-
ing, to whom I had delivered a thousand dollars as
advance pay for his company, which, agreeable to
the

D 3

the instructions I received, had a right to do; yet was I obliged to account with the government for this money, and entirely lost every penny of it. It has already been mentioned, that the garrison at Fort Edward, was this winter under the command of Lieut. Col. Haviland. This gentleman, about the 28th of February, ordered out a scout under the direction of one Putnam, Captain of a company of one of the Connecticut provincial regiments, with some of my men, given out publicly at the same time, that, upon Putnam's return, I should be sent to the French forts with a strong party of 400 Rangers.

This was known not only to all the officers, but soldiers also, at Fort Edward before Putnam's departure.

While this party was out, a servant of Mr. Best, a sutler to the Rangers, was captivated by a flying party of the enemy from Ticonderoga; unfortunately too, one of Putnam's men had left him at Lake George, and deserted to the enemy. Upon Captain Putnam's return, we were informed he had ventured within eight miles of the French fort at Ticonderoga, and that a party he had sent to make discoveries had reported to him, that there were near 600 Indians not far from the enemy's quarters.

March 10, 1758. Soon after the said Captain Putnam's return, in consequence of positive orders from Col. Haviland, I this day began a march from
Fort

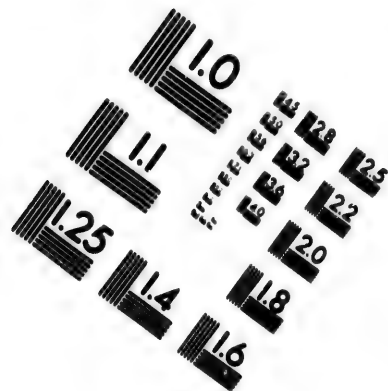
ad a right to do; yet was
the government for this
very penny of it. It has
at the garrison at Fort
under the command of
his gentleman, about the
out a scout under the di-
tain of a company of one
ial regiments, with some
olickly at the same time,
n, I should be sent to the
party of 400 Rangers.

y to all the officers, but
ard before Putnam's do-

t, a servant of Mr. Best, a
captivated by a flying par-
underoga; unfortunately
en had left him at Lake
e enemy. Upon Captain
e informed he had ventu-
the French fort at Ticon-
he had sent to make disco-
, that there were near 600
enemy's quarters.

fter the said Captain Put-
quence of positive orders
is day began a march from
Fort





6"



Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

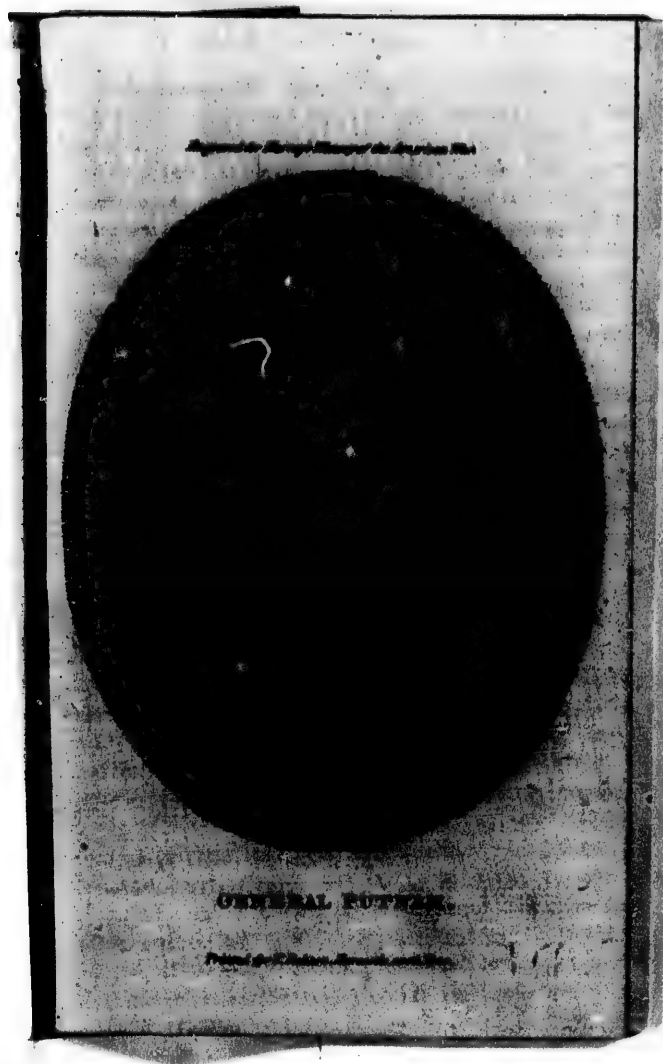
**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1985





Fort Edward for the neighbourhood of Carillon, not with a party of 400 men, as at first given out, but of 180 men only, officers included, one Captain, one Lieutenant, and one Ensign, and three volunteers, viz. Mess. Creed, Kent and Wrightson, one serjeant, and one private, all of the 27th regiment; and a detachment from the four companies of Rangers, quartered on the island near Fort Edward, viz. Capt Buckley, Lieutenants Phillips, Moore, Crafton, Campbell, and Pottinger; Ensigns Rosa, Wait, M'Donald, and White, and 162 private men. I acknowledge I entered upon this service, and viewed this small detachment of brave men march out, with no little concern and uneasiness of mind; for as there was the greatest reason to suspect, that the French were, by the prisoner and deserter above mentioned, fully informed of the design of sending me out upon Putnam's return: what could I think to see my party, instead of being strengthened and augmented, reduced to less than one half the number at first proposed. I must confess it appeared to me (ignorant and unskilled as I then was in politics, and the art of war) incomprehensible; but my commander doubtless had his reasons; and is able to vindicate his own conduct. We marched to the half-way brook, in the road leading to Lake George, and there encamped the first night.

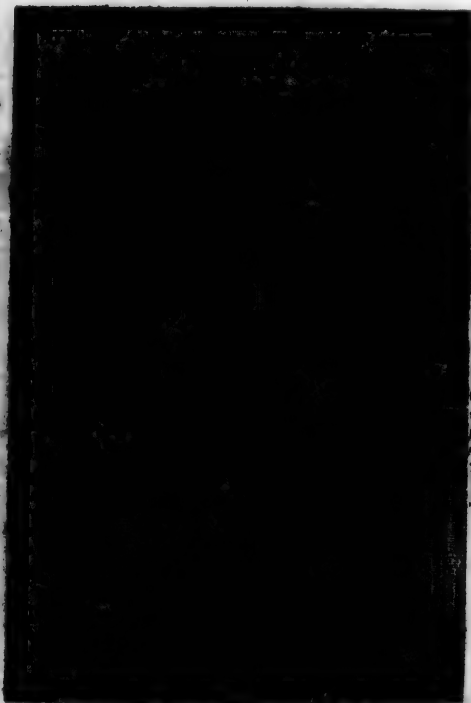
The 11th we proceeded as far as the first Narrows on Lake George, and encamped that even-

ing on the east-side of the lake; and after dark, I sent a party three miles further down, to see if the enemy might be coming towards our forts, but they returned without discovering any. We were however on our guard, and kept parties walking on the lake all night, besides cantries at all necessary places on the land.

The 14th we marched from our encampment at sun-rise, and having distanced it about three miles, I saw a dog running across the lake, whereupon I sent a detachment to reconnoitre the island, thinking the Indians might have laid in ambush there for us; but no such could be discovered; upon which I thought it expedient to put to shore and lay by till night, to prevent any party from descrying us on the lake, from hills, or otherwise. We halted at a place called Sabbath-day Point, on the west-side of the lake, and sent our parties to look down the lake with perspective glasses, which we had for that purpose. As soon as it was dark we proceeded down the lake. I sent Lieutenant Phillips with fifteen men, as an advanced guard, some of whom went before him on scates, while Esign Rois flanked us on the left under the west-shore, near which we kept the main body, marching as close as possible, to prevent separation, it being a very dark night. In this manner we continued our march till within eight miles of the shore.

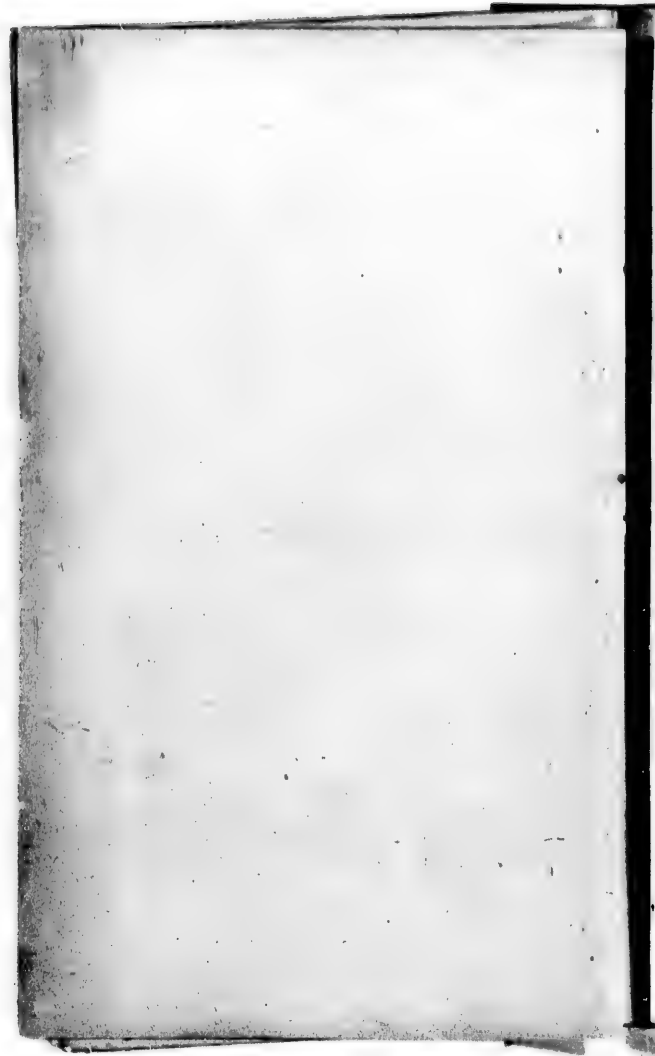
and after dark, I
down, to see if the
is our forts, but
any. We were
parties walking
tries at all neces-

our encampment at
about three miles,
lake, whereupon
noitre the island.
we laid in ambush.
be discovered; up-
nt to put to them
at any party from
hills, or otherwise.
Bath-day Point, on
est our parties to
five glasses, which
soon as it was dark.
I sent Lieutenant
an advanced guard,
in on scates, while
left under the west-
main body, march-
vent separation, it
is manner we con-
eight miles of the
shore.



George Pitt Rivers

GEORGE PITT RIVERS



French advanced guards, when Lieutenant Phillips sent a man on skates back to me, to desire me to halt; upon which I ordered my men to squat down upon the ice. Mr. Phillips soon came to me himself, leaving his party to look out, and said, he imagined he had discovered a fire * on the east-shore, but was not certain; upon which I sent with him Ensign White, to make further discovery. In about an hour they returned, fully persuaded that a party of the enemy was encamped there. I then called in the advanced guard, and flanking party, and marched on to the west-shore, where, in a thicket, we hid our sleds and packs, leaving a small guard with them, and with the remainder I marched to attack the enemy's encampment, if there was any; but when we came near the place, no fires were to be seen, which made us conclude that we had mistaken some bleach patches of snow, or pieces of rotten wood, for fire (which in the night, at a distance resembles it) whereupon we returned to our packs, and there lay the remainder of the night without fire.

The 13th, in the morning, I deliberated with the officers how to proceed, who were unanimously of opinion, that it was best to go by land in snow-shoes, lest the enemy should discover us on the lake; we accordingly.

* A small party of the French, as we have since heard, had a fire here at this time, but, discovering my advanced party, extinguished their fire, and carried the news of our approach to the French fleet.

cordingly continued our march on the west-side, keeping on the back of the mountain that overlooked the French advanced guard. At twelve of the clock we halted two miles west of those guards, and there refreshed ourselves till three, that the day-scout from the fort might be returned home before we advanced; intending at night to ambuscade some of their roads, in order to trepan them in the morning. We then marched in two divisions, the one headed by Captain Buckley, the other by myself: Ensign White and Wait had the rear-guard, the other officers were posted properly in each division, having a rivulet at a small distance on our left, and a steep mountain on our right. We kept close to the mountain, that the advanced guard might better observe the rivulet, on the ice of which I imagined they would travel it out, as the snow was four feet deep, and very bad traveling on snow-shoes.

In this manner we marched a mile and an half, when our advanced guard informed me of the enemy being in their view; and soon after, that they had ascertained their number to be ninety-six, chiefly Indians.

We immediately laid down our packs, and prepared for battle, supposing these to be the whole number or main body of the enemy, who were marching on our left up the rivulet, upon the ice. I ordered Ensign McDonald to the command of the advanced guard, which, as we faced to the left, made

on the west-side, tain; that overlook- At twelve of the of these guards, and three, that the day- turned home before t to ambuscade some n them in the mor- ve divisions, the one he other by myself: he rear-guard, the o- rty in each division, ances on our left, and ght. We kept close advanced guard might the ice of which I out, as the snow was velling on snow-shoes. mile and an half; when the of the enemy being, that they had ascer- ty-six, chiefly Indians. n our packs, and pre- these to be the whole be enemy, who were rivulet, upon the ice. I n the command of the we faced to the left, made

made a flanking party to our right. We marched to within a few yards of the bank, which was higher than the ground we occupied; and observing the ground gradually to descend from the bank of the rivulet to the foot of the mountain, we extended our party along the bank, far enough to command the whole of the enemy's at once; we waited till their front was nearly opposite to our left wing, when I fired a gun, as a signal for a general discharge upon them; whereupon we gave them the first fire, which killed above forty Indians; they retreated, and were pursued by about one half of our people. I now imagined the enemy totally defeated, and ordered Ensign McDonald to head the flying remains of them, that none might escape; but we soon found our mistake, and that the party we had attacked were only their advanced guard, their main body coming up, consisting of 600 more, Canadians and Indians; upon which I ordered our people to retreat to their own ground, which we gained at the expence of fifty men killed; the remainder I rallied, and drew up in pretty good order, where they fought with such intrepidity and bravery as obliged the enemy (tho' seven to one in number) to retreat a second time; but we not being in a condition to pursue them, they rallied again, and recovered their ground, and warmly pushed us in front and both wings, while the mountain defended our rear; but they were slowly excited; that their flanking parties soon retreated to their

their main body with considerable loss. This threw the whole again into disorder, and they retreated a third time; but our numbers being now too far reduced to take advantage of their disorder, they rallied again, and made a fresh attack upon us. About this time we discovered 200 Indians going up the mountain on our right, as we supposed, to get possession of the rising ground, and attack our rear; to prevent which I sent Lieutenant Phillips, with eighteen men, to gain the first possession, and beat them back; which he did, and being suspicious that the enemy would go round on our left, and take possession of the other part of the hill, I sent Lieutenant Crafton, with fifteen men, to prevent them there; and soon after desired two Gentlemen, who were there volunteers in the party, with a few men, to go and support him, which they did with great bravery.

The enemy pushed us so close in front, that the

parties
I had before this desired these gentlemen to make, offering them a Sergeant to conduct them; that as they were not used to foot-paths, and were unacquainted with the woods, they would have no chance of eluding the enemy, in case we should be broken and go to flight, which I very much suspected. They at first seemed to accept the offer, and began to retire; but seeing us so closely kept, they undauntedly returned to our assistance. What befel them after our flight, may be seen by a letter from one of the Gentlemen to the commanding officer, which I have inserted near the bottom of the page.

lost. This threw
and they retreated
ing now too far re-
disorder, they ral-
back upon us. All
o Indians going up
we supposed, to get
and attack our rear.
nant Phillips, with
possession, and be-
being suspicious that
our left, and take
the hill, I sent Lie-
ut., to prevent them.
two Gentlemen, who
party*, with a few
which they did with.

in front, that the
parties
men to catch them
they were not able to follow
wounds, they would have
if we should be broke and
had. They did not seem
us, but feeling us so closely
or assistance. What be-
of a letter from one of the
which they were informed.

parties were not more than twenty yards asunder
in general, and sometimes intermixed with each o-
ther. The fire continued almost constant for an
hour and a half from the beginning of the attack, in
which time we lost eight officers, and more than
100 private men killed on the spot. We were at
last obliged to break, and I with about twenty men
ran up the hill to Phillips and Carlton, where we
stopped and fired on the Indians who were eagerly
pushing us, with numbers that we could not with-
stand. Lieutenant Phillips being surrounded by 300
Indians, was at this time capitulating for himself
and party, on the other part of the hill. He spoke
to me, and said if the enemy would give them good
quarters, he thought it best to surrender, other-
wise that he would fight while he had one man left
to fire a gun †.

I now thought it most prudent to retreat, and
bring off with me as many of my party as I possibly
could, which I immediately did; the Indians close-
ly pursuing us at the same time, took several pri-
soners. We came to Lake George in the evening,
where we found several wounded men, whom we
took

† This unfortunate officer, and his whole party, after they
surrendered, upon the strongest assurances of good treatment
from the enemy, were inhumanly tied up to trees, and hewn to
pieces, in a most barbarous and shocking manner.

took with us to the place where we had left our sleds, from whence I sent an express to Fort Edward, desiring Mr. Haviland to send a party to meet us, and assist us in bringing in the wounded; with the remainder I tarried there the whole night, without fire or blankets, and in the morning we proceeded up the lake, and met with Captain Stark at Hoop Island, six miles north from Fort William-Henry, and encamped there that night; the next day being the 15th, in the evening, we arrived at Fort Edward.

The number of the enemy was about 700, 600 of which were Indians. By the best accounts we could get, we killed 150 of them, and wounded as many more. I will not pretend to determine what we should have done had we been 400 or more strong; but this I am obliged to say of those brave men who attended me (most of whom are now no more) both officers and soldiers in their respective stations behaved with uncommon resolution and courage; nor do I know an instance during the whole action in which I can justly impeach the prudence or good conduct of any one of them.

The following is a List of the Killed, Missing, &c.

The Captain and Lieutenant of his Majesty's regular troops, volunteers in this party, were taken

ere we had left our
express to Fort Ed-
to send a party to meet
the wounded; with-
the whole night, with-
morning we proceed-
Captain Stark at Hoop
Fort William-Henry,
t; the next day being
e arrived at Fort Ed-

y was about 700, 600-
the best accounts we
them, and wounded as
tend to determine what
we been 400 or more
ed to say of those brave
st of whom are now no
diers in their respective
mon resolution and cou-
stance during the whole
y impeach the prudence
of them.

7 of the Killed, Mis-
ant of his Majesty's re-
in this party, were ta-
ken

[81]

ken prisoners; the Ensign, another volunteer of
the same corps, was killed, as were two volun-
teers, and a Serjeant of the said corps, and one
private.

Of Capt. Rogers's Company,

Lieut. Moore — Killed.

Serjeant Parnell — Ditto.

Thirty-six privates — Ditto.

Of Capt. Shepherd's Company,

Two Serjeants

Sixteen privates

Of Capt. James Rogers's Company,

Ensign M'Donald — Killed.

Of Capt. John Stark's Company,

Two Serjeants — Killed.

Fourteen privates — Ditto.

Of Capt. Bulkley's Company,

Capt. Bulkley — Killed.

Lieut. Pottinger — Ditto.

Ensign White — Ditto.

Forty-seven privates — K. and Miss.

Of Capt. William Stark's Company,

Ensign Rose — Killed.

Of Capt. Brown's Company,

Lieut. Campbell — Killed.

A Gentleman of the army, who was a volunteer

on this party, and who with another fell into the hands of the French, wrote the following letter, some time after, to the officer commanding the regiment they belonged to at Fort Edward.

Civilian, Advers 128, 1750.

" Dear Sir,

As a flag of truce is daily expected here with an answer to Monsieur Vaudreuil, I sit down to write the moment I am able, in order to have a letter ready, as no doubt you and our friends at Fort Edward are anxious to be informed about Mr. — and me, whom probably you have reckoned among the slain in our unfortunate rencounter of the 13th, concerning which at present I shall not be particular; only to do this justice to those who lost their lives there, and to those who have escaped, to assure you, Sir, that such dispositions were formed by the enemy, (who discovered us long enough before) it was impossible for a party so weak as ours to hope for even a retreat. Towards the conclusion of the affair, it was cried from a rising ground on our right, to retire there; where, after scrambling with difficulty, as I was unaccustomed to snow-shoes, I found Capt. Rogers had told him that I saw to retire further was impossible, therefore earnestly begged we might collect all the men left, and make a stand there. Mr. —, who was with him, was of my opinion, and Capt. Rogers

another fell into the
following letter,
commanding the re-
treat of Edward.

Adams 128, 1757.

retired here with an
I sit down to write
der to have a letter
friends at Fort I'd
about Mr. — and
reckoned among
counter of the 13th,
shall not be particu-
those who lost their
have escaped, to af-
visions were formed
red us long enough
a party so weak as
Towards the con-
cried from a rising
there, where, after
I was unaccompanied
Rogers, and told him
was impossible, there-
he collect all the men
Mr. —, who was
n, and Capt. Rogers
also;

also; who therefore desired me to maintain one side
of the hill, which he defended the other. Our
parties did not much above ten or twelve in each,
and mine was shifting towards the mountain, leav-
ing me unable to defend my post, or to labour
with them up the hill. In the mean time, Capt.
Rogers with his party came to me, and said (as did
all others with them) that a large body of Indians
had descended to our right; he likewise added, what
was true, that the combat was very unequal, that
I must retire, and he would give Mr. — and me
a Serjeant to conduct us thro' the mountain. No
doubt: prudence required us to accept his offer;
but, dissatisfied of my Serjeant's being a native, I
knew myself unable to march so fast as the regular
troop could, and being a sacrifice to an enemy we
could no longer oppose; I therefore begged of him
to protect, and then turned against the back in the
path, determined to submit to a fatal thought un-
avoidable. Unfortunately for me, my horse
strove to force his way, which obliged him to
charge with him, and he was in a slighter
way, but unequal to. Every Indian was expected
the fight; but what induced them to quit this
post, in which we actually sat down, we are igno-
rant of, unless they changed it for a shorter, to the
consequence of which had just before. By their quick
understanding of it, we imagined they had got the
rein to the Rangers' pack. This thought, with
the

The approach of night, gave us the first hopes of retiring; and when the moon arose, we marched to the southward along the mountain, about three hours; which brought us to ice; and gave us reason to hope our difficulties were almost past; but we knew not we had enemies yet to combat with more cruel than the savages we had escaped. We marched all night; and on the morning of the sixth found ourselves entirely unacquainted with our situation. Here we saw a man, who came towards us; he was the servant of Capt. Rogers, with whom he had been sometimes all over the country, and, without the least hesitation, whatsoever he informed us we were upon South Bay; that Wood-Creek was just before us; that he knew the way to Fort Anne extremely well; and would take us to Port Edward the next day. Notwithstanding we were disappointed in our hopes of being upon Lake George; we thought ourselves fortunate in meeting such a guide, to whom we gave entire confidence; and which he is well rewarded, by bringing us to a creek, where he showed the tracks of Indians and the path he said they had taken to Fort Anne. After struggling thro' the snow some hours, we were obliged to halt, to make fresh shoes, as Mr. Jones and the guide had left theirs at sleeping upon the ice. Here we remained all night without any blankets or coats, and but a single gun each, each gun having one of mine to Mr. —, who had laid aside his

the first hopes of
 arose, we marched
 mountain, about three
 and gave us reason
 almost past; but we
 to combat with more
 escaped. We march-
 ing of the night found
 with obstacles. Here
 ward was he, was the
 whom he had been
 ry, and, without the
 informed as we were.
 Creek was just before
 Fort Anne extremely
 Fort Edward the next
 we disappointed in our
 George; we thought
 ing such a guide, so
 once, and which he in-
 to be correct, where he
 and the path he said
 was. After struggling
 we were obliged to
 the mountain and the
 upon the ice. Here
 and the mountain was
 coast, and the mountain
 who had his side his
 green

green jacket in the field, as I did likewise my furred
 cap, which became a mark to the enemy, and prob-
 ably was the cause of a slight wound in my face;
 so that I had but a silk handkerchief on my head,
 and our fire could not be large, as we had nothing
 to cut wood with. Before morning we contrived
 with forked sticks and strings of leather, a sort of
 snow-shoes, to prevent sinking entirely; and, on the
 15th, followed our guide west all day, but he did
 not fulfil his promise; however the next day it was
 impossible to fail; but even then, the 16th, he was
 unsuccessful; yet still we were patient, because he
 seemed well acquainted with the way, for he gave
 every mountain a name, and showed us several pla-
 ces, where he said his master had either killed
 deer or encamped. The ground, or rather the
 want of sun-shine, made us incline to the south-
 ward, from whence by accident we saw ice, at se-
 veral miles distance, to the south-east. I was very
 certain, that after marching two days west of South
 Bay, Lake George could not be south-east from us,
 and therefore concluded this to be the upper end of
 the bay we had left. For this reason, together with
 the assurances of our guide, I advised continuing our
 course to the west, which must shortly strike Fort
 Anne, or some other place that we knew. But
 Mr. [] wished to be upon the ice at any rate; he
 was unable to continue in the snow for the diffi-
 culty of our march had overcome him. And fi-
 ally,

lity, Sir, was I to be misstruck in those we had anticipated already and afterwards, they would almost be as certain to you as to me, as they were to us in fact.

Our snow-shoes breaking, and sinking to our middle every fifty paces, the scrambling up mountains and across fallen timber, our nights without sleep or covering, and but little fire, gathered with great fatigue, our sustenance mostly water, and the bark and berries of trees, for all our provisions from the beginning was only a small Bologna sausage, and a little ginger, I happened to have, and which even now was very much decreased, so that I knew not how to oppose Mr. ———'s insinuation, but as our guide still persisted Fort Anne was near, we concluded to search a little longer, and if we made no discovery to proceed next day towards the ice, but we fought in vain, as did our guide the next morning, tho' he returned, confidently asserting, he had discovered fresh proofs, that the fort could not be far off. I confess I was still inclined to follow him, for I was almost certain the bathos would hope for descending upon this ice to our left, was to throw ourselves into the hands of the French, and perhaps not be able to effect even that, but from the circumstance I have mentioned, it was a point I must yield to, which I did with great reluctance. The whole day of the 19th we marched a doubtful road,

those we had captured, they would almost as they were the same, and I had not time to think of it, and sinking to our scrambling up mountains, our nights without fire, gathered with mostly water, and the loss of all our provisions, a small Bolognese, happened to have, and which decreased, so that Fort Anne was near, little longer, and if we next day, towards the sea, did our guide the most confidently, afterwards, that the first of the ice was still inclined, and certain the best we upon this ice to our left, the hands of the French, but from the ice, it was a point with great difficulty, we marched in a difficult road,

and, between the mountains, with but one good snow-shoe each, the other of our own making, being almost useless. The French brought us to the ice, which they intended to cross, yet I still doubted this intention, and with reason; for the first sight informed us, it was the very place we had left a few days before, where I saw some my recollections, and while fatigue, cold, hunger, and even the prospect of perishing in the woods, rendered our own hope, and our own courage, almost useless, we wanted to try, we had no resources, but to throw ourselves into the enemy's hands, as a last resort. We had nothing to eat, our slender stock had been already shared amongst us, and we were not so fortunate as to see either life or death ahead of us. When our first thoughts were finally calmed, we conceived hope, that if we appeared before the French fort, with a white flag, the commanding officer would relieve and return us to Port Howard. This served to pacify our hearts, and to appear, and determined a resolution, where in fact, we had no choice. I knew Captain Hall as an old man, and up South Bay, therefore we were obliged to halt during the evening, and march in the night, that we might approach it in the morning, before the wind shifted, and the ice was not so fast of its setting. It increased, together with a freezing rain, that descended incessantly with us, and obliged us to remain until morning, the 19th, when we fortunately

fortunately got some juniper berries, which revived,
 gave us spirits, and I thought strength. We were
 both so firmly of that opinion, that we persisted in
 taking the advantage of its being a dark snowy day, to
 approach Carillon, to pass it in the night, and get
 upon Lake George. With difficulty we persuaded
 the guide to be of our opinion, we promised large re-
 ward in vain, until I offered him of provisions laid
 upon the lake; but we little considered how much
 nature was exhausted, and how unequal we were
 to the task: however, a few miles convinced us, we
 were soon midway up our legs in the new-fallen
 snow; it drove full in our faces, and was as dark as
 the fogs upon the banks of Newfoundland. Our
 strength and our hopes sunk together, nay, even
 those of reaching Carillon were doubtful, but we
 must proceed or perish. As it cleared up a little,
 we laboured to see the fort, which at every turn we
 expected, until we came to where the ice was gone,
 and the water narrow. This did not then agree
 with my idea of South Bay, but it was no time for
 reflection; we quitted the ice to the left, and after
 marching two miles, our guide assured us we ought
 to be on the other side of the water. This was a ve-
 ry distressing circumstance, yet we returned to the
 line and passed to the right, where, after struggling
 through the snow, about four miles, and breathing
 in every second step, as we had no snow-shoes, we
 were stopped by a large water fall. Here I was a-
 gain

barrels, which revived,
at strength. We were
that we purposed to
a dark snowy day. In
in the night, and got
difficulty we persuaded
we promised large re-
aid him of provisions hid
considered how much
than wanted, we were
miles contracted to, we
legs in the new fallen
ices, and was in dark as
Newfoundland. Our
ink together, say, eyes
were doubtful, but we
As it cleared up a little,
which at every turn we
where the ice was gone.
This did not then agree
but it was no time for
ice to the left, and after
guide assured us we ought
the water. This was a ve-
ry, but we returned to the
where, after struggling
four miles, and finding
we had no other hopes, we
water-fall. Here I was a-
gain

gain almost with appearance, but nothing now
was to be thought of only reaching the fort before
night; yet to pass this place seemed impracticable;
however, I attempted to ford it a little higher,
and had almost gained the opposite shore, where
the depth of the water, which was up to my breast,
and the rapidity of the stream, hurried me off the
slippery rocks, and plunged me entirely into the wa-
ter. I was obliged to quit my gun, and with
great difficulty escaped being carried down the fall.
Mr. _____, who followed me, and the guide, though
they held one another, suffered the same fate; but
the hope of soon reaching a fire made us think
lightly of this: as night approached we laboured
excessively though the stream, we were certain the
fort was not far from us, but our guide confessed,
for the first time, that he was at a loss. Here we
plainly observed that his brain was affected: he
saw Indians all around him, and though we have
since learned we had every thing as far from them,
yet in such danger we did not know what to do; only
we shouted aloud several times to give information
we were there; but we could neither hear nor see
any body to lend us right, or more likely to destroy
us, and if we halted a minute we became pillars of
ice: so that we were obliged, as it were so hard,
to make a fire, although the danger was apparent.
Fortunately we had some dry cartridges, and in trying
with my pistol if it would strike a little of the pow-
der,

the, but we unfortunately lost the advantage we
 were, by which, it took fire, blew up in our faces,
 almost blinded him, and gave excessive pain. This
 indeed promised to be the last stroke of fortune, as
 hopes of a fire were no more; but although we
 were not anxious about life, we knew it was more
 to supply than yield to the just desire
 to make a path, and a tree, and quite
 directed all the night, through heavily dark to find,
 or prevent such other death. Our guide
 (perhaps thinking) repeated the last, struggled from us
 where he lay down and died immediately. On the
 morning of the 26th, we saw the fire, which we
 supposed had been a great fire, and which we
 clearly towards us, and which we took a longer we
 did not think approaching; and we were informed,
 that if the Indians, who were close before them,
 had killed us, it would not have been to
 the power of the French to have given us death.
 Inhumanity to their enemy, and perhaps we should
 the postscript which we are happy to hear of.
 About 12 o'clock, we were informed that all with
 humanity and politeness, and we followed in our
 company, which returns us, as you may have
 seen, from all such difficulties; but though I have
 written many, yet I can assure you with all the
 feelings, but not with, I am, perhaps, more
 fresh, that nothing but the situation of our
 body, admitted, could determine to let us go, which

which appeared only one degree preferable to perishing in the woods.

"I shall make no comments upon these difficulties, the malicious perhaps will say, which is very true, we brought them upon ourselves; but let them not wantonly add, we deserved them, because we were unsuccessful. They must allow we could not be led abroad, on such a footing of snow and ice, for amusement, or by an idle curiosity. I gave you, Sir, my reasons for asking leave, which you were pleased to approve, and I hope, will defend them; and the same would make me again, on a voluntary, anticipate the chance of war to-morrow, had I an opportunity. There are Mr. —'s sentiments as well as mine; and we both know you, Sir, too well to harbour the least doubt of receiving justice with regard to our conduct in this affair: of your promotion in the regiment, the prospect of not joining that so soon as we flattered ourselves had determined our spirits to the highest degree, so that we expressly beg you will be so obliging with the General to have us restored as soon as possible, or at least to prevent our being sent to France, and separated from you, perhaps, during the war. I am, Sir, your obedient servant."

I have but one thing more to add, which we learned here, and which perhaps you have already observed from what I have said, that we were upon

no other lee than that of Lake George; but by the day overtaking us, the morning of the 14th, in the very place we had, in coming, marched during the night, we were entirely unacquainted with it, and obliged to put a confidence in this guide, whose stead must have been astray from the beginning, or he could not so grossly have mistaken a place where he had so often been. This information but added to our distress, until we reflected that our not being entirely lost was the more wonderful. That we had parted from South Bay on the 14th, was a point which is beyond all doubt, and about which we never were hesitated, so that we acted entirely contrary to what we had established as a truth; for if, according to that, we had continued our course to the west, we must inevitably have perished; but the hand of Providence led us their contrary to our judgment; and though even then, and often afterwards, we thought it severe, yet to the end it saved us, and obliged us to reflect that we contrived many things unfortunate, which tended to our preservation. I am, &c.

Upon my return from the late unfortunate scout, I was ordered to Albany to recruit my companions, where I met with a very friendly reception from my Lord How, who advanced me cash to recruit the Rangers, and gave me leave to wait upon General Abercrombie at New York, who had now succeeded

succeeded my Lord Loudoun in the chief command, my Lord being at this time about to embark for England. I here received a commission from the General, of which the following is a copy.

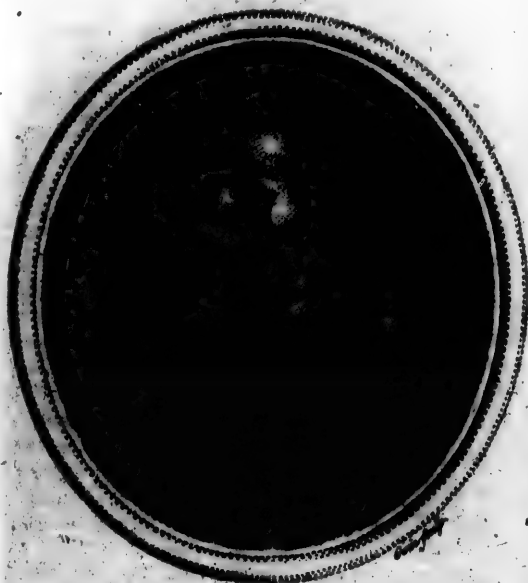
"By his Excellency James Abercrombie, Esq; Colonel of his Majesty's 44th Regiment of Foot, Colonel in Chief of the 60th or Royal American Regiment, Major General and Commander in Chief of all his Majesty's Forces raised or to be raised in North America, &c.

"Whereas it may be of great use to his Majesty's service in the operations now carrying on for recovering his rights in America, to have a number of men employed in obtaining intelligence of the strength, situation, and motions of the enemy, as well as other services, for which Rangers, or men acquainted with the woods, only are fit: Having the greatest confidence in your loyalty, courage and skill in this kind of service, I do, by virtue of the power and authority to me given by his Majesty, hereby constitute and appoint you to be Major of the Rangers in his Majesty's service, and likewise Captain of a company of said Rangers. You are therefore to take the said Rangers as Major, and the said Company as Captain, into your care.

case and charge, and duly exercise and instruct, as well the officers as the soldiers thereof, in arms, and to use your best endeavours to keep them in good order and discipline, and I do hereby command them to obey you as their Major and Captain respectively, and you are to follow and observe such orders and directions from time to time as your superiors from His Majesty, myself, or any other superior officers, according to the rules and discipline of war.

Given at New York, this 6th Day of April 1758, in the thirty-first Year of the reign of our Sovereign Lord George the Second, by the Grace of God, King of Great Britain, France and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, &c. By his Excellency's command: *John Mifflin*
 I left New York April 8, and according to order accompanied Lord Howe at Albany for his direction, on the 12th with whom I had a most agreeable interview, and a long conversation concerning the method of attacking the enemy, and prosecuting the war with vigour the ensuing campaign. I parted with him, having the strongest assurances of his friendship and influence in my behalf, and was upon Colonel Grant commanding officer

exercise and instruct, as
 diars thereof, in arms,
 yours to keep them in
 and I do hereby com-
 their Major and Cap-
 are to follow and ob-
 according to the rules
 his Majesty, myself, or
 according to the rules
 this 6th Day of April
 first Year of the reign of
 George the Second, by
 King of Great Britain,
 Defender of the Faith, &c.
 and according to or-
 Albany for his direc-
 whom I had a most
 long conversation con-
 tending the enemy, and
 vigour the ensuing cam-
 paign, having the support
 and influence in my be-
 nel Grant, commanding
 officer



LORD VISCOUNT HOWE.



officer at Fort Edward, to assist him in conducting the Rangers, and scouting parties, in such a manner as might best serve the common cause, having a letter from my Lord to him. Capt. Stark was immediately dispatched to Ticondesoga on the west-side of Lake George. Capt. Jacob, whose Indian name was *Nawnawapetewank*, on the east-side, and Capt. Shepherd betwixt the lakes, with directions to take if possible some prisoners near Carillon. About the same time I marched myself with eighteen men to Crown Point. Capt. Burbank was likewise dispatched in quest of prisoners. These scouts being often relieved, were kept out pretty constantly, in order to discover any parties of the enemy that might fall out towards our forts or frontiers, and to reconnoitre their situation and motions from time to time. The success of my own scout was as follows.

April 29, 1758, I marched from Fort Edward with a party of eighteen men, up the road that leads to Fort William Henry four miles, then north four miles, and encamped at Schoon Creek. It having been a very rainy day.

On the 30th we marched north and by east all day, and encamped near South Bay.

On the 1st of May we continued the same course, made but a small way, and encamped near the same place.

and at night encamped near the narrows, north of South Bay.

The 2d, in the morning, made a raft, and crossed the bay over to the east side, and having distanced the lake about four miles we encamped.

The 3d we steered our course north, and lay at night about three miles from Carillon.

The 4th we marched north-by-east all day, and encamped at night three miles from Crown Point Fort.

The 5th we killed one Frenchman, and took three prisoners.

The 6th, in the morning, began our return homeward, and arrived with our prisoners at Fort Edward the 9th.

One of the prisoners, who appeared to be the most intelligible, reported; "that he was born at
" Lorrain in France; that he had been in Canada eight years, viz. two at Quebec, one at
" Montreal, and five at Crown Point; that
" at the latter were but 200 soldiers, of which
" Monf. le Jahong was commander in chief; that
" at Ticonderoga there were 400 of the Queen's
" regiment, 150 marines 200 Canadians, and about
" 700.

the narrows, north of
made a raft, and cross-
ed, and having distance
we encamped.

course north, and lay at
Carillon.

by-east all day, and
from Crown Point

Frenchman, and took
began our return
our prisoners at Fort

appeared to be the
that he was born at
that he had been in Ca-
ro at Quebec, one at
Crown Point; that
200 soldiers, of which
commander in chief; that
400 of the Queen's
0 Canadians, and about

" 700.

" 700 Indians; and that they daily expected 300
" Indians more; that they did not intend to attack
" our forts this summer, but were preparing to re-
" ceive us at Ticonderoga; that they had heard
" that I, with most of my party, was killed in the
" conflict last March; but afterwards by some
" prisoners which a small party of their Indians
" had taken from Dutch Hoosyk, they were in-
" formed that Rogers was yet alive, and was go-
" ing to attack them again, being fully resolved to
" revenge the inhumanity and barbarity with
" which they had used his men, in particular Lieut.
" Philips and his party, who were butchered by
" them, after they had promised them quarters;
" that this was talked of among the Indians, who
" greatly blamed the French for encouraging them
" so to do."

Captains Stark and Jacob returned the day be-
fore me; the former brought in with him six pri-
soners, four of which he took near Ticonderoga;
they having escaped from New York and Albany,
were in their flight to the French forts. The lat-
ter, who had but one white man with him, and
eighteen Indians, took ten prisoners, and seven
scalps, out of a party of fifty French. An account
of these scouts, and the intelligence thereby gained,
was transmitted to my Lord How, and by him to
the General.

About

About the middle of May, a flag of truce was sent to Ticonderoga, on Col. Schyler's account, which put a stop to all offensive scouts, till its return.

May 28, 1758, I received positive orders from the General, to order all officers and men, belonging to the Rangers, and the two Indian companies, who were on furlow, or recruiting parties, to join their respective companies as soon as possible, and that every man of the corps under my command should be at his post at or before the 10th of next month. These orders were obeyed, and parties kept out on various scouts till the 8th of June, when my Lord How arrived at Fort Edward with the rest of the army.

His Lordship immediately ordered me out with fifty men in whale-boats, which were carried over by waggons to Lake George, and directed me at all times to take a plan of the landing-place at the south end with all possible accuracy, and also of the ground from the landing-place to the French fort at Carillon, and of Lake Champlain for three miles beyond it, and to discover the enemy's number in that quarter. Agreeable to these orders, on the 28th in the morning, I marched with a party of fifty men, and encamped in the evening at the place where Fort William-Henry stood.

a flag of truce was
Schuyler's account,
the scouts, till its re-

positive orders from
the and men, belong-
to Indian companies,
being parties, to join
soon as possible, and
under my command
before the 10th of next
obeyed, and parties
till the 8th of June,
at Fort Edward with
the British.

ordered me out with
which were carried over
and directed me at all
the landing-place at the
curacy, and also of the
place to the French
Champlain for three
over the enemy's num-
ber to these orders, on
marched with a party
in the evening as the
Henry Hood.

On

On the 30th we proceeded down the lake in five
whale-boats to the first narrows, and so on to the
west end of the lake, where I took the plan his
Lordship desired. Part of my party then proceeded
to reconnoitre Ticonderoga, and discovered a large
encampment there, and a great number of Indians.

While I was, with two or three others, taking a
plan of the fort, encampment &c. I left the re-
mainder of my party at some considerable distance;
when I was returning to them, at the distance of a-
bout 300 yards, they were fallen upon by a superi-
or number of the enemy who had got between me
and them. Capt. Jacobs, with the Mohagon In-
dians, ran off at the first onset, calling to our peo-
ple to run likewise; but they stood their ground,
and discharged their pieces several times, at last
broke through the enemy, by whom they were sur-
rounded on all sides except their rear, where a river
divided them: they killed three of the enemy, but lost
eight of their own party in this skirmish. My par-
ty rallied at the boats, where I joined them, and
having collected all but the slain together, we re-
turned homeward. On the 30th at Half Way
brook, we met my Lord How, advanced with
three thousand men, to whom I gave an account of
my success, together with a plan of the landing-place,
the fort at Carillon, and the situation of the
lakes.

and I

I obtained

I obtained leave of my Lord to go to Fort Edward, where his Excellency Major General Abercrombie was then posted, who ordered me to join my Lord How the next day with all the Rangers, being 600, in order to proceed with his Lordship to the lake.

On the 22d his Lordship encamped at the lake where formerly stood Fort William-Henry, and ordered the Rangers to advance 400 yards on the west-side, and encamp there; from which place, by his Lordship's orders, I sent off next morning three small parties of Rangers, viz. one to the narrows of South Bay, another to the west-side of Lake George, and a third to Ticonderoga Fort, all three parties by land. Another party, consisting of two Lieutenants and seventeen men, proceeded down the lake for discoveries, and were all made prisoners by about 300 French and Indians. This party embarked in whale-boats.

About the 25th of June, his Excellency Major General Abercrombie arrived at the lake with the remainder of the army, where he tarried till the morning of the 5th of July, and then the whole army, consisting of near 16,000, embarked in batons for Ticonderoga.

The

to go to Fort. Ed-
 major General Aber-
 ordered me to join
 with all the Rangers,
 with his Lordship.

camped at the lake
 diam-Henry, and ca-
 400 yards on the
 from which place,
 off next morning
 viz. one to the nar-
 to the west-side of
 Ticonderoga Fort, all
 party, consisting of
 men, proceeded
 and were all made pri-
 and Indians. This

As soon as it was light his Lordship, with Col.
 Broadstreet and myself, went down to observe the
 landing-place before the army, and when within
 about a quarter of a mile, plainly discerned that it
 was but a small detachment of the enemy that was
 there; whereupon his Lordship said he would return
 to the General, that the army might land and
 march to Ticonderoga. About twelve o'clock the
 whole army landed; the Rangers on the left wing.

The order of march was a most agreeable sight,
 the regular troops in the center, provincials on
 each wing, the light infantry on the right of the ad-
 vanced guard, the Rangers on the left, with Colo-
 nel Broadstreet's battos-men in the center. In
 this manner we proceeded, till dusk, down Lake
 George to Sabbath Day Point, where the army
 halted and refreshed. About ten o'clock the army
 moved again, when my Lord How went in the front
 with his whale-boat, Lieutenant Col. Broadstreet's
 and mine, with Lieutenant Holmes, in another,
 whom he sent forward to go near the landing-place,
 and observe if any enemy was posted there.

Holmes returned about day-break, met the army
 near the Blue Mountains within four miles of the
 landing place, and reported that there was a party
 of the enemy at the landing-place, which he disco-
 vered by their fires.

As soon as it was light his Lordship, with Col.
 Broadstreet and myself, went down to observe the
 landing-place before the army, and when within
 about a quarter of a mile, plainly discerned that it
 was but a small detachment of the enemy that was
 there; whereupon his Lordship said he would return
 to the General, that the army might land and
 march to Ticonderoga. About twelve o'clock the
 whole army landed; the Rangers on the left wing.

I immer-

I immediately sent an officer to wait upon the General for his orders, and received directions from Capt. Abercrombie, one of his Aide de Camps, to gain the top of a mountain that bore north about a mile from the landing-place, and from thence to steer east to the river that runs betwixt the falls betwixt the landing and the saw-mill, to take possession of some rising ground on the enemy's side, and there to wait the army's coming. I immediately marched, ascended to the top of the hill, and from thence marched to the place I was ordered, where I arrived in about an hour, and posted my party to as good advantage as I could, being within one quarter of a mile of where Mont. Montcalm was posted with 1900 men, whom I had discovered by some small reconnoitring parties sent out for that purpose. About twelve o'clock Colonel Lyman and Fitch of the provincials came to my rear, whom I informed of the enemy's being so very near, and inquiring concerning the army, they told me they were coming along. While this conversation passed, a sharp fire began in the rear of Col. Lyman's regiment, on which he said he would make his front immediately, and desired me to fall on their left flank, which I accordingly did, having first ordered Capt. Butcher with 150 men to remain at the place where I was posted, to observe the motions of the French at the saw-mill, and went with the remainder of the Regiment on the left flank of the enemy.

walk upon the Ge-
neral direction from
the Alde de Camp.
The horsemen about
and from thence to
the lake the full be-
half, to take posses-
sion of the lake, and
the lake. I immediately
of the hill, and from
was ordered, where
and passed my party to
the lake, being within one
mile. Montcalm was
as I had discovered by
the sent out for that
Colonel Lyman
to my rear, who
was in very near, and
they, they told me they
their conversation pas-
sage of Col. Lyman's
would make his front
to fall on their left
side, having first order-
ed them to remain at the
to observe the motions
of the enemy, and went with the
the left flank of the e-
nemy.

enemy, the river being on their right, and killed se-
veral. By this time my Lord Howe, with a de-
tachment from his front, had broke the enemy, and
hemmed them in on every side, but advancing him-
self with great eagerness and intrepidity upon them,
was unfortunately shot and died immediately.
There were taken prisoners of the enemy in this
action, five officers, two volunteers, and one
hundred and sixty men, who were sent to the lan-
ding place. Nothing more material was done this
day. The next morning, at six o'clock, I was
ordered to march to the river that runs into the
lake, a place, where I was the day before, and
there to halt on the west side till further orders,
with four hundred Rangers, while Capt. Stark,
with the remainder of the Rangers, marched with
Capt. Abercrombie and Mr. Clark the Engineer, to
observe the position of the enemy at the fort, from
whence they returned, again that evening. The
whole army lay the ensuing night under arms. By
sun rise next morning, Sir William Johnson, joined
the army with four hundred and forty Indians. At
seven o'clock I received orders to march with my
Rangers. A Lieutenant of Captain Stark's led the
advanced guard. I was within about three hun-
dred

This note and those others being universally believed by both
commanding officers of the army, his death was not only much
sorely lamented, but seemed to produce an almost general
paralysis and languor through the whole.

drad yards of the breast-work, when my advanced guard was ambushed and fired upon by about two Frenchmen. I immediately formed a front, and marched up to the advanced guard, who maintained their ground, and the enemy immediately retreated; soon after the battoo-men formed on my left and light infantry on my right. This fire of the enemy did not kill a single man. Soon after three regiments of provincials came up and formed in my rear, at two hundred yards distance. While the army was thus forming, a scattering fire kept up between our flying parties and those of the enemy without the breast-work. About half an hour past ten, the greatest part of the enemy being drawn up, a smart fire began on the left wing, where Col. De Lencoe's, (the New Yorkers,) and the battoo-men were posted, upon which I was ordered forward to endeavour to beat the enemy within the breast-work, and then to fall down, that the pickets and grenadiers might march through. The enemy soon retired within their works; Major Proby marched through with his pickets within a few yards of the breast-work, where he unhappily fell, and the enemy keeping up a heavy fire, the soldiers hallooed to the right about; when Col. Haldiman came up with the grenadiers to support them, being followed by the battalions in brigades for their support. Col. Haldiman advanced very near the breast-work, which

was at least eight feet high; some of the provincials with the Mohecks came up also*.

We toiled with repeated attacks for four hours, being greatly embarrassed by trees that were felled by the enemy without their breast-work, when the General thought proper to order a retreat, directing me to bring up the rear which I did in the dusk of the evening. On the ninth in the evening, we arrived at our encampment at the south-end of Lake George, where the army received the thanks of the General for their good behaviour, and were ordered to entrench themselves; the wounded were sent to Fort Edward and Albany. Our loss both in the regular and provincial troops, was somewhat considerable. The enemy's loss was about five hundred, besides those who were taken prisoners.

July 8, 1758. By order of the General, I this day began a scout to South Bay, from which I returned the 16th, having effected nothing considerable, except discovering a large party of the enemy, supposed to be near a thousand, on the east side of the lake. This party the next day, viz. the 17th,

* This attack was begun before the General intended to do so, and as it was by accident, from the fire of the New Yorkers in the left wing upon which Col. Haviland being in or near the center, ordered the troops to advance.

fell upon a detachment of Col. Nichol's regiment at the half-way brook, killed three captains, and upwards of twenty private men.

The 27th another party of the enemy fell upon a convoy of waggons between Fort Edward and Half-Way Brook, and killed 216 men, sixteen of which were Rangers. In pursuit of this party, with a design to intercept their retreat, I was ordered to embark the 15th with 700 men; the enemy however escaped me, and in my return home on the 3rd, I was met by an express from the General, with orders to march with 700 men to South and East Bay, and return by way of Fort Edward, in the prosecution of which orders nothing very material happened till the 8th of August; in our return, early in the morning of which day, we decamped from the place where Fort Anne stood, and began our march, Major Putnam with a party of Provincials marching in the front, my Rangers in the rear, Capt. Dalgell with the regulars in the center, the other officers suitably disposed among the men, being in number 530, exclusive of officers (a number having by leave returned home the day before.) After marching about three-quarters of a mile, a fire began with five hundred of the enemy in the front; I brought my people into as good order as possible, Capt Dalgell in the center, and the Rangers on the right, with Col.

Nichols's regiment
three captains, and
en.

the enemy fell upon
Fort Edward and
216 men, sixteen of
pursuit of this party,
retreat, I was order-
700 men; the enemy
my return home on
from the Gene-
with 700 men to South
way of Fort Edward,
orders nothing very im-
of August; in our re-
of which day, we de-
Fort Anne stood, and
Annam with a party of
front, my Rangers in
with the regulars in the
suitably disposed among
30, exclusive of officers,
returned home the day
about three-quarters of
five hundred of the
I brought my pos-
possible, Capt Dabell
gers on the right, with
Col.

Col. Partridge's light infantry; on the left was
Capt. Gidding's of the Boston troops with his peo-
ple, and Major Putnam being in the front of his
men when the fire began, the enemy rushing in,
took him, one Lieutenant, and two others, prison-
ers, and considerably disordered others of the party,
who afterwards rallied and did good service, parti-
cularly Lieutenant Durkee, who notwithstanding
two wounds, one in his thigh the other in his
wrist, kept in the action the whole time, encourag-
ing his men with great earnestness and resolution.
Capt. Dabell with Gage's light infantry, and Lieut.
Eyers of the 4th regiment, behaved with great
bravery, they being in the center, where was at
first the hottest fire, which afterwards fell to the
right where the Rangers were, and where the ene-
my made four different attacks; in short, officers
and soldiers throughout the detachment behaved
with such vigour and resolution, as in one hour's
time broke the enemy and obliged them to retreat,
which they did with such confusion that small-
pistol, bayonet, or any great opportunity to dis-
turb them by a pursuit: we hope the God will direct our
deed. When the action was over, we had missing
fifty-four men, twenty-one of which afterwards
came in, being separated from us while the action
continued. The enemy's loss was 199 killed on

the
the

the spot, several of which were Indians. We arrived at Fort Edward on the 9th, being met at some distance from it by Col. Provost, with a party of 100, and refreshments for the wounded, which I had desired by an express sent before.

I remained at Fort Edward till the 11th of the month, when I received orders from Col. Provost, who was then at Fort Edward, to march and pursue the tracks of a large party of Indians, of which he had received intelligence, down the east-side of Hudson's River, in order to secure our convoys from them, and intercept their retreat; but this report which the Colonel had received being groundless, my scout was ineffectual. I returned to Fort Edward on the 14th, and went with a detachment directly to the camp at Lake George.

On the 15th, I received orders from the General to march with a detachment of 100 men, to visit and reconnoitre the enemy's position, in which expedition I obtained several articles of intelligence concerning the enemy, their situation and numbers at different posts, and returned the 14th to the camp at Lake George.

By a detachment that went out afterwards, fifty more of the enemy were found dead near the place of action.

re Indians*. We ar-
gth, being met at
Probst, with a par-
s for the wounded,
prate sent before.

till the 11th of the
s from Col. Probst,
and commanded at
pursue the tracks of a
which he had received
le of Hudson's River,
from them, and inter-
ort which the Colonel
ray scout was ineffec-
Edward on the 14th,
t directly to the en-

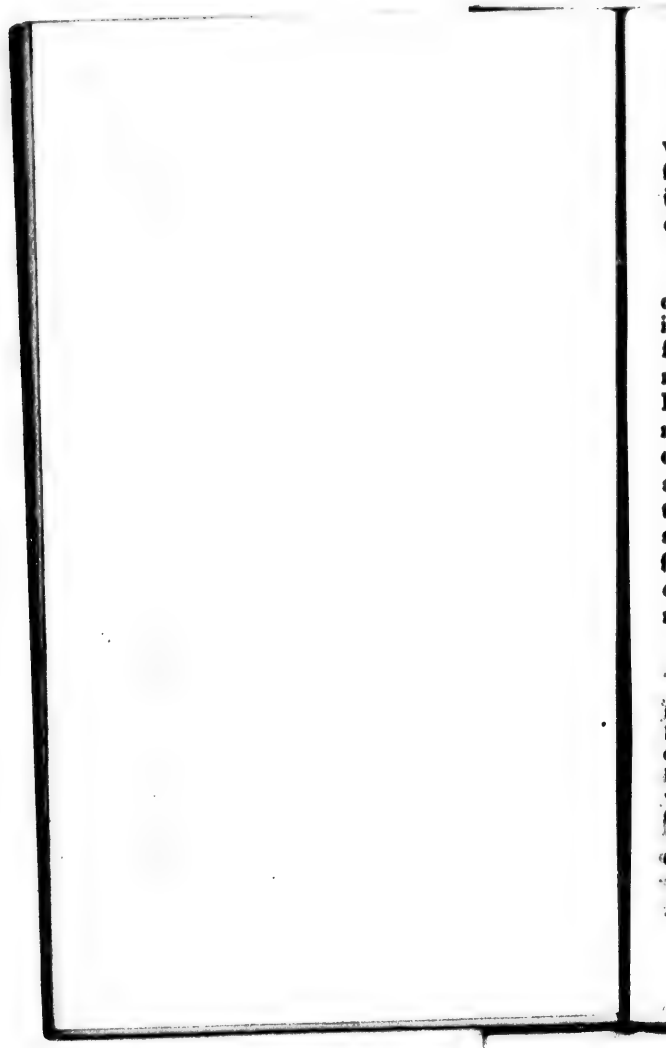
from the General I
a whale-boat, to visit
a, in which expedition
intelligence capturing
d members at different
to the commandant at
which point of time
his wife, which was

at afterwards, fifty more of
place of action.



Like George was in the house

Edmund, New York



I was employed in various other excursions towards the enemy's forts and frontiers, and in pursuit of their flying parties till the campaign for this year ended, and our army retired to winter-quarters.

Notwithstanding little was effected by our late campaign to Ticonderoga; yet the British army in America were not every where unsuccessful: for Col. Broadstreet, with a detachment of 2000 men, reduced the French fort at Cataraqui, called Fort Frontenac*, and General Amherst, who commanded the British troops at Cape Breton, had succeeded in the reduction of that important fortress, and now returned from his conquest, with a part of the troops that had been employed there, and was appointed commander in chief of his Majesty's forces in North America (General Abercrombie embarking for England). The head quarters were now fixed at New York, and I had now new commanders

* This fort was square faced, had four bastions built with stone, and was near three-quarters of a mile in circumference. Its situation was very beautiful, the banks of the river presenting on every side an agreeable landscape, with a fine prospect of the Lake Ontario, which was distant about a league, interspersed with many islands that were well wooded, and seemingly fruitful. The French had formerly a great trade at this fort with the Indians, it being erected on purpose to prevent their trading with the English; but it is now nearly destroyed.

campaign to Lincolnshire; yet the British army
 in 1845. *Albany, Jan. 21, 1858.*
 Col. Broadbent, with a detachment of 1000
 men, landed at the mouth of the Sagadahoc River, in
 January, 1858, and proceeded to Fort Edward, to-
 gether with a large number of the militia, now recruiting in
 the western part of New England, who have
 lately landed at, since they have already landed
 near 400 men, with recruits last month, was
 at Fort Edward, and it may be supposed that the
 enemy will soon send their Indians, to either cut
 intercept our conveyances between New and Fort
 Edward, and I had no doubt, that they would

* To be reasonably strong to prevent their
playing their old game; I would humbly propose
to be consistent with the service and obedient
to General Anthonys, my feeling are for New En-
gland, I feel in my heart that I must be ac-
quainted with all the facts of the war, and of
himself, of his Excellency and mine. It is likely
be agreeable to the General that I should go to
New-England, I should be glad it might be by way

of New York, that I might have an opportunity to wait upon the General myself, and represent to him the necessity of an augmentation of the Rangers now at Fort Edward, and the desire of the Stockbridge Indians to re-enter the service.

"The arms of the Rangers are in the hands of Mr. Cunningham at New York, which will be soon wanted at Fort Edward; I should therefore be glad they might be forwarded as soon as may be. I have wrote to Mr Cunningham, to make application to you for convenient carriages for the same, which I should be glad you would furnish him with. And till the time I have an opportunity of paying you my respects in person, I beg leave so to subscribe myself, Sir,

Your most obedient humble servant,

Robert Rogers."

"P. S. General Stanwix informs me, that a subaltern officer, and about twenty Rangers, are to be stationed at No 4; the officer I would recommend for that post, is Lieut. Stephens, who is well acquainted with the country thereabout. He is now recruiting."

To Col. Townsend.

Soon after this I returned to Fort Edward, where I received the Colonel's answer, as follows.

" Sir, Feb. 3, 1759.

" I received your letter, with the inclosed returns. The General commands me to inform you, he can by no means approve of your leaving Fort Edward.

" Your recruiting officers are all ordered to send up their recruits to Fort Edward. They are not only wrote to, but an advertisement is put in all the papers; which was the only method the General had of conveying his intentions to them, as you had not sent me any return of the officers names, and places where they were to recruit at. In obedience to that order, the recruits will be up sooner than if they waited your coming down. I have likewise repeated the order to every officer, according to your return, by this post, and if you are complete by the returns they make, I shall order up every individual officer to their posts.

" Any proposals for the augmentation of the Rangers, or proposals from the Stockbridge Indians, you

you would chuse to offer to the General, he desires
may be immediately sent down to him.

"The arms for the Rangers, which you mention
are in the hands of Mr. Cunningham, shall be
sent up to you immediately.

"I have wrote to Lieut. Samuel Stephens, to
acquaint him with the General's intentions of leaving
him at No 4.

"If the enemy send out any scouting parties
this year to pick up intelligence, or attack our convoys,
the season of the year is now coming on that
we may expect them; you therefore must see the
necessity of your remaining at Fort Edward.
Your officers and men should join you as fast as
possible. The General would at another time
comply with your request.

Your obedient humble servant,

R. Townsend, D. A. G."

Feb. 15, 1759.

To Major Rogers.

I wrote to the Colonel, proposing an addition
of two new companies of Rangers upon the same
footing

F 2

footing as those already in the service, and the raising of three companies of Indians, to serve the ensuing campaign; and lest the Indians should be gone out on their hunting parties, and so be prevented from joining us, I wrote to three of their Sachems, or chiefs; one of which to King Uname, head Sachem of the Mohogan Indians (which in substance is like the others) I will here insert, as a specimen of the method, in which we are obliged to address these savages.

" Brother Uname,

" As it is for the advantage of his Majesty King George, to have a large body of Rangers employed in his service the ensuing campaign, and as I am well convinced of the sincere attachment you have to him, I therefore carefully obey General Amherst's orders to me, to engage your assistance here early in the spring.

" I hope you'll continue to show that ardent zeal you have all along expressed for the English, ever since you have been allied to them, by raising a company of your men with the utmost expedition.

" Should you chuse, to come out a Captain, General Amherst will readily give you the com-

mission for it; if not, I shall expect Doquips and Nunnipad. I leave to you the choice of an Ensign and two sergeants; but I hope you'll engage the fittest men for their stations. I would have the company consist of fifty private men, or more, if you can get them; and if those men that deserted from Capt. Brewer will join you, the General will pardon them. You may employ a Clerk for the company, to whom General Amherst will allow the usual pay.

"I heartily wish you success in raising your men, and shall be exceeding glad that you join me with all the expedition you possibly can. I am,

Brother Uncus,

Your most obedient humble servant,

To King Uncus. *Robert Rogers.*

With this letter, or any other wrote to them, in order to give it any credit or influence, must go a bag of wampum, suitable to the matter and occasion of it, and upon which the bearer, after having read the letter, interprets it, and then delivers both to the Sachem, or person they are directed to.

The latter end of February, about fifty Mohocks, commanded by Captain Lotridge, came from Sir William Johnson to join me, and proceed to Ticonderoga on a scout.

March 3. 1759. I received the following orders from Col. Haldiman: "An officer being chosen by the General to make observations upon the enemy's situation, and the strength of their forts upon Lake Champlain, you are ordered to march with your Rangers, and the Mohock Indians, under the command of Capt. Lotridge, and take all the measures and precautions possible, that he may execute his intentions, and perform the service, which the General has much at heart; and to effect this with more security, a body of regulars is likewise ordered to join with you, and you are to have the command of the whole. Lieut. Bismarck is to communicate his orders to you; and the service being performed, you will endeavour to take a prisoner, or prisoners, or strike such a stroke on the enemy, and try to bring us intelligence.

"He recommends it in the strongest manner, that if some of the enemy should fall into your hands to prevent the Indians from exercising their cruelty.

cruelly upon them, as he desires prisoners may be treated with humanity.

Fort Edward,
March 3, 1759.

Fred. Haldiman,
Commander at
Fort Edward.

Pursuant to the above orders, I marched the same day with a party of 358 men, officers included, and encamped the first night at Half-Way-Brook. One Indian, being hurt by accident, returned to Fort Edward. The 4th marched to within one mile and a half of Lake George, and halted till evening, that we might the better pass undiscovered by the enemy, if any were on the hill reconnoitering. We continued our march till two o'clock in the morning, and halted at the first narrows. It being excessive cold, and several of our party being frost-bitten, I sent back twenty-three, under the charge of a careful sergeant, to Fort Edward. We continued here till the evening of the 5th, then marched to Sabbath-day Point, where we arrived about eleven o'clock, almost overcome with the cold. At two o'clock we continued our march, and reached the landing place about eight. I sent out a small party to observe if any of the enemies parties went out. They returned and reported, that none were to be seen on the west-side of the lake, but on the east were two working parties. It now ap-

seemed to be a suitable time for the engineer to make his observations. I left Capt. Williams to remain at this place with the Regulars, and thirty Rangers, while I, with the engineer, forty-nine Rangers, and Capt. Lotridge, with forty-five Indians, went to the isthmus that overlooks the fort, where he made his observations. We returned to our party, leaving five Indians and one Ranger to observe what number crossed the lake in the evening from the east-side to the fort, that I might know the better how to attack them next morning. At dark the engineer went again, with Lieut. Tute, and a guard of ten men, to the entrenchments, and returned at midnight without opposition, having done his business to his satisfaction. On which I ordered Capt. Williams with the Regulars back to Sabbath-day Point, the party being extremely distressed with the cold, it appeared to me imprudent to march his men any further, especially as they had no snow-shoes. I sent with him Lieut. Tute and thirty Rangers, with directions to kindle fires on the aforesaid point. At three o'clock I marched with three Lieutenants and forty Rangers, one Regular, and Capt. Lotridge with forty-six Indians, in order to be ready to attack the enemy's working parties on the east-side of the lake early in the morning. We crossed South-Bay about eight miles south

1
 for the engineer to make
 not. Williams to remain
 rs, and thirty Rangers,
 forty-nine Rangers,
 forty-five Indians, went
 ks the fort, where he
 returned to our party,
 e Ranger to observe
 ke in the evening from
 I might know the bet-
 morning. At dark the
 lieut. Tute, and a guard
 ments, and returned
 tion, having done his
 On which I ordered
 gulars back to Sabbath-
 ng extremely distressed
 me imprudent to march
 ly as they had no snow-
 ient. Tute and thirty
 o kindle fires on the
 o'clock I marched with
 Rangers, one Regular,
 forty-six Indians, in or-
 e enemy's working per-
 lake early in the morn-
 lay about eight miles
 south.

south of this fort*; from thence, it being about six
 o'clock, bore down right opposite the fort, and
 within half a mile of where the French parties agree-
 able to our expectations, were cutting of wood.
 Here I halted, and sent two Indians and two Rangers
 to observe their situation. They returned in a few
 minutes, and brought intelligence that the working
 parties were close to the banks of the lake, and op-
 posite the fort, and were about forty in number;
 upon which we stripped off our blankets, and ran
 down upon them, took several prisoners, and def-
 troyed most of the party as they were retreating to
 the fort, from whence being discovered, about
 eighty Canadians and Indians pursued us closely, be-
 ing backed by about 150 French regulars, and in
 a mile's march they began a fire in our rear; and
 as we marched in a line abreast, our front was easi-
 ly made; I halted on a rising ground, resolving to
 make a stand against the enemy, who appeared
 at first very resolute: but we repulsed them before
 their reinforcement came up, and began our march
 again in a line abreast; having advanced about half
 a mile further, they came in sight again. As soon
 as we could obtain an advantageous post, which
 was a long ridge, we again made a stand on the side
 opposite the enemy. The Canadians and Indians
 came very close, but were soon stopped by a warm
 fire.

F 5

* Here we found that a party of Indians had gone up the
 bay towards our forts.

fire from the Rangers and Mohocks. They broke immediately, and the Mohocks with some Rangers pursued, and entirely routed them before their Regulars could come up. After this we marched without any opposition. In these several skirmishes we had two Rangers and one Regular killed, and one Indian wounded, and killed about thirty of the enemy. We continued our march till 12 o'clock at night, and came to Capt. Williams at Sabbath-day Point (fifty miles distant from the place we set out from in the morning.) The Captain received us with good fires, than which scarce any thing could be more acceptable to my party, several of which had their feet froze, it being excessive cold, and the snow four feet deep. Next morning marched the whole detachment as far as Long-Island in Lake George, and there encamped that night. On our march from Sabbath-day Point to this Island, I gave leave to some of the Rangers and Indians to hunt near the side of the lake, who brought us in great plenty of venison for our refreshment.

I sent Lieut. Tate, with the following letter, to Col. Haldiman, fearing lest a party of Indians we had some notice of might have gone up South-Bay, and get an opportunity of doing mischief before I could reach Fort Edward with the whole detachment.

Camp

*Camp at Sabbath-day Point, Friday, eight
o'clock in the morning.*

"SIR,

"I send this to let you know that sixty Indians, in two parties, are gone towards Fort Edward and Saratoga, and I fear will strike some blow before this reaches you. Mr. Brueen is satisfied he has done his business agreeable to his orders; since which I have taken some prisoners from Ticonderoga and destroyed others of the enemy, of the party of which the bearer will inform you.

The Mohocks behaved with great bravery; some having been within pistol-shot of the French fort.

"Two-thirds of my detachment have frozen their feet (the weather being so severe that it is almost impossible to describe it) some of which we are obliged to carry. I am, Sir,

R. ROGERS."

Fort Edward, March 10, 1755.

"Dear Sir,

"I congratulate you heartily on your good success, and send you twenty-two sleds to transport your sick. You will by this opportunity, take as many hands as you can conveniently. My best

* Bunde left at the place where Fort William Henry stood, unknown to the French.

compliments

shocks. They broke
with some Rangers
them before their Re-
his we marched with-
several skirmishes we
regular killed, and one
out thirty of the ene-
arch till 12 o'clock at
Williams at Sabbath-day
the place we set out
Captain received us
scarce any thing could
arty, several of which
excessive cold, and the
morning marched the
Long Island in Lake
that night. On our
point to this Island, I
Rangers and Indians to
ke, who brought us in
our refreshment.

the following letter, to
a party of Indians we
ave gone up South-Bay,
doing mischief before I
with the whole detach-

Camp

compliments to Capt. Williams, and to all the gentlemen. I am, Sir,

Your most humble Servant,

FRED. HALDIMAND.

" P. S. I had the signal guns fired to give notice to the different posts. Nothing has appeared as yet.†"

We were met by the boys, and a detachment of 100 men at Lake George, and all arrived safely at Fort Edward, where I received the following letters upon my arrival.

" SIR,

" I yesterday received your letter by Mr. Stark. The general approves of raising the Indian companies; but as he has not heard the Rangers are complete, he cannot agree to the raising more companies, till the present ones are complete at Fort Edward. My Stark sets out to-morrow for New England. I have ordered him to hurry up the recruits of your corps, and repeat my orders to the officers, to join their companies if they are complete. Your arms have been tried and proved by

† The explosion of these signal-guns (as we afterwards heard) was heard by the party of the enemy, then near Fort Miller, eight miles below Fort Edward, who thereupon supposing themselves discovered, retreated with precipitation.

the artillery; they answer very well, and are ordered to be sent to you as fast as possible: The general has sent to you by Capt. Jacobs. We have chose out one hundred men from each regiment, and pitched upon the officers to act this year as light infantry; they are clothed and accoutred as light as possible, and, in my opinion, are a kind of troops that has been much wanted in this country. They have what ammunition they want, so that I don't doubt but they will be excellent marksmen. You may depend upon general Amherst's intentions to have you; I heard Brigadier Gage mention you to him. From what knowledge I have of the General, I can only say that merit is sure to be rewarded; nor does he favour any recommendation, without the person recommended really deserves his promotion. You will return your companies to me as soon as complete.

Your obedient humble servant,

New-York,

R. TOWNSHEND.

Feb. 26, 1759.

To Major Rogers.

" Sir, New-York, Feb. 13, 1759.

" This will be delivered to you by Capt. Jacob Nawnawampetesonk, who last campaign commanded a company of Stockbridge Indians, and who, upon hearing that you had wrote to me concerning him, came to offer me his service for the ensuing campaign:

campaign: But as you have not mentioned to me the terms and conditions on which he was to engage, I have referred him to you to give in his proposals, that you may report to me thereupon, and inform me if you think his service adequate to them; after which I shall give you my answer. I am, Sir,
Your very humble Servant

JEFF. AMHERST.

To Major Rogers.

Before I received this letter from his Excellency, I had wrote to him, recommending several officers to the vacancies in the ranging companies, and inclosed a journal of my late scout; soon after my return from which I went to Albany, to settle my accounts with the government, where I waited upon his Excellency the General, by whom I was very kindly received, and assured that I should have the rank of Major in the army from the date of my commission under General Abercrombie.

I returned to Fort-Edward the 17th of May, where I received the melancholy news, that Capt. Burbank, with a party of thirty men, had in my absence been sent out on a scout, and were all cut off. This gave me great uneasiness; as Mr. Burbank was a gentleman I very highly esteemed, and one of the best officers among the Rangers, and more especially as I judged the scout he was sent out

not mentioned to me
which he was to en-
you to give in his pro-
to me thereupon, and
adequate to them;
my answer. I am, Sir,
able Servant

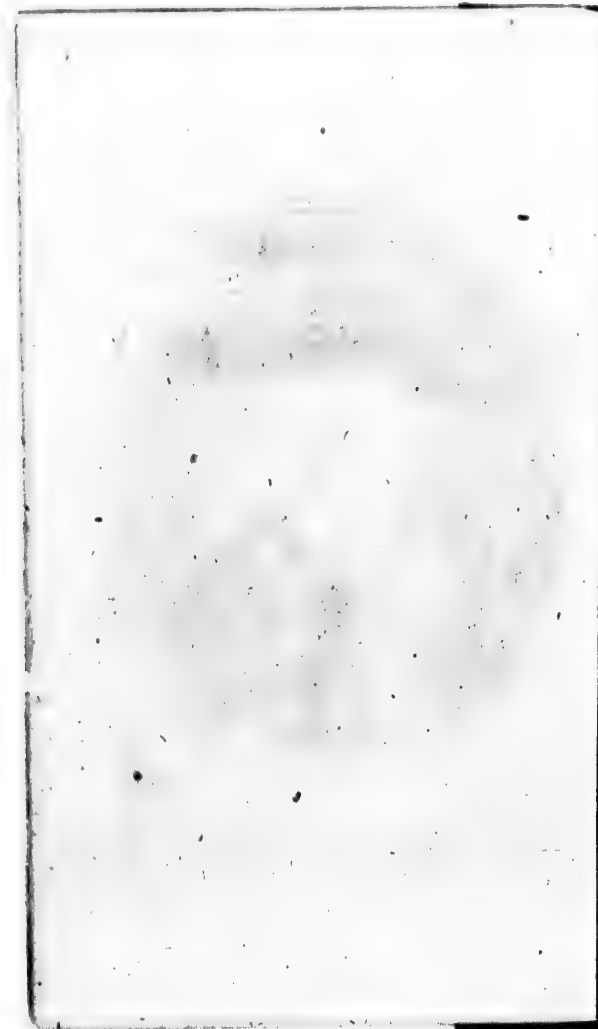
JEFF. AMHERST.

from his Excellency,
ending several officers
ing companies, and in-
out; soon after my
Albany, to settle my
ent, where I waited
eral, by whom I was
ered that I should have
y from the date of my
bercrombie.

the 15th of May,
holy news, that Capt.
irty men, had in my
out; and were all cut
as Mr. Bur-
highly esteemed, and
ing the Rangers, and
the fact he was sent
out



ST. JEFFERY AMHERST.



o
n
h
M
c
i
t
w
to
th
o
w
th
re
R
E
b
in
M
in
p

out upon by the commanding officer at the fort was needless, and unadvisedly undertaken.

Preparations for the campaign were hastened by his Excellency the General in every quarter; the levies from the several provinces forwarded, the companies of Rangers completed, and disciplined in the best manner I was capable of, and of which the general was pleased greatly to approve.

In the month of June, part of the army marched with General Gage for the lake. I was ordered to send three companies there with Capt. Stark, and to remain with the General myself with the other three companies, till such time as he marched thither. In this interval, pursuant to his Excellency's orders, I sent out several parties to the French forts, who from time to time discovered the situation of the enemy, and brought satisfactory intelligence.

About the 20th of June, the General with the remainder of the army marched to the lake, the Rangers being in the advanced guard; and here his Excellency was pleased to fulfil his promise to me, by declaring in public orders, my rank of Major in the army, from the date of my commission, as Major of the Rangers. We continued here collecting our strength together, and making necessary preparations, and getting what intelligence we could
of

of the strength and situation of the enemy, till July 21, 1759, when the army embarked for Ticonderoga. I was in the front with the Rangers on the right wing, and was the first body that landed on July 22, at the north end of Lake George, followed by the grenadiers and light infantry, which Col. Haviland commanded.

I marched, agreeable to orders from the General, across the mountains in the isthmus; from thence, in a by-way, athwart the woods to the bridge at the Saw-mills; where finding the bridge standing, I immediately crossed it with my Rangers, and took possession of the rising ground on the other side, and beat from thence a party of the enemy, and took several prisoners, killed others, and put the remainder to flight, before Colonel Haviland with his grenadiers and light infantry got over. The army took possession that night of the heights near the Saw-mills, where they lay all this evening.

The enemy kept out a scouting-party, with a body of Canadians and Indians, which killed several of our men, and galled us prodigiously.

July 23. The General, early in the morning, put the army in motion; at the same time ordered me in the front, with directions to proceed across the

the enemy, till just before the Rangers on the side that landed on the George, followed by the infantry, which Col. the Chestnut Plain, the highest and best way I could, to Lake Champlain, and do my endeavour to strike it near the edge of the cleared ground, between that and the breast-work, where I was to halt till I received further orders. Having pursued my orders, and halted at the lake, I informed the General of my situation, and that nothing extraordinary had happened in our march.

The General by this time had appointed and formed a detachment to attack their main breast-work on the hill, and had got possession of it. I was ordered to send two hundred men to take possession of a small entrenchment next to Lake Champlain; and Captain Brewer, whom I had sent to take possession of this post, happily succeeded.

From the time the army came in sight the enemy kept up a constant fire of cannon from their walls and batteries at our people. The General at this time had left several provincial regiments to bring the cannon and ammunition across the Carrying Place, together with provisions, which they did with great expedition.

July

* About this time some of the Provincial regiments were sent to Oswego, to assist in building a fort there.

July 24. All this day the engineers were employed in raising batteries, as was likewise a great part of the army in that work, and in making and fetching fascines, till the 26th at night; all which time I had parties out on Crown Point to watch the motions of the enemy there; by which means the General had not only daily, but hourly intelligence from those posts.

I this day received orders from the General to attempt to cut away a boom which the French had thrown across the lake opposite the fort, which prevented our boats from passing by, and cutting off their retreat. For the completion of this order I had sixty Rangers in one English flat-bottomed boat, and two whale-boats*, in which, after night came on, I embarked, and passed over to the other side of Lake Champlain, opposite to the Rangers encampment, and from that intended to steer my course along the east-shore, and privately saw off their boom, for which end I had taken saws with me, the boom being made with logs of timber.

About nine o'clock, when I had got about half way

* These boats were carried across the land from Lake George to Lake Champlain, on which day the brave and worthy Colonel Townsend was killed by a cannon ball from the enemy, whose fall was much lamented by the General.

engineers were em-
was likewise a great
and in making and
at night; all which
n Point to watch the
by which means the
at hourly intelligence

from the General to
which the French had
the fort, which
ing by, and cutting
mpletion of this order
English flat-bottomed
in which, after night
ssed over to the other
posite to the Rangers
intended to flee my
and privately saw off
had taken saws with
with logs of timber.

a. I had got about half
way

h the land from Lake George
the brave and worthy Colonel
batt from the enemy, who
surrendered.

way from the place where I had embarked, the
enemy, who had undermined their fort, sprung
their mines, which blew up with a loud explosion,
the enemy being all ready to embark on board
their boats, and make a retreat. This gave me
an opportunity to attack them with such success as
to drive several of them ashore; so that next morn-
ing we took from the east-shore ten boats, with a
considerable quantity of baggage, and upwards of
fifty barrel of powder, and large quantities of ball.
About ten o'clock I returned, and made my report
to the General.

The 27th I was ordered with my party to the
Saw-mills (to wait the flying parties of the enemy,
which were expected that way) where I lay till
the 11th of August*, on which day I received the
following orders from General Amherst.

" Sir,

" You are this night to send a Captain, with a
proper proportion of subalterns, and two hundred
men, to Crown Point, where the officer is to post
himself in such a manner as not to be surprized,
and to seize on the best ground for defending him-
self.

* About this time a party of my people discovered that the
enemy's Post at Crown Point was likewise blown up, and that
many fled.

self, and if he should be attacked by the enemy, he is not to retreat with his party, but keep his ground till he is reinforced from the army.

I am, Sir,

Your most obedient,

To Major Rogers.

Jess. Amherst.

Capt. Brewer went with a party, and the General followed the 12th with the whole army, and the same day arrived at Crown Point, where it was found that Captain Brewer had executed his orders extremely well.

This evening I had orders for encamping, and the ground for each corps being laid out, my camp was fixed in the front of the army. Immediately after the General had got the disposition of his camp settled, he began to clear ground, and prepare a place for erecting a new fort, in which service great part of the army was employed. I had orders to send Capt. Stark, with two hundred Rangers, to cut a road to No. 4, which party was immediately sent.

During these transactions I sent out (by the General's approbation) several scouting parties against the

the enemy *, which brought in prisoners from St. John's Fort, and others penetrated into the back country, the better to learn the nature and situation of it.

Thus were we employed till the 12th of September, when the General, exasperated at the treatment which Capt. Kennedy had met with, who had been sent with a party as a flag of truce to the St. Francis Indians, with proposals of peace to them, and was by them made a prisoner with his whole party; this ungenerous inhumane treatment determined the General to chastize these savages with some severity, and, in order to it, I received from him the following orders, viz.

† " You are this night to set out with the detachment as ordered yesterday, viz. of 200 men, which you will take under your command, and proceed to Missisquoi Bay, from whence you will march

* Captain Tate, and Lieutenant Fletcher, in two different scouting parties, were taken and carried to Canada.

† That this expedition might be carried on with the utmost secrecy after the plan of it was concerted the day before my march, it was put into public orders, that I was to march a different way, at the same time I had private instructions to proceed directly to St. Francis.

march and attack the enemy's settlements on the south-side of the river St. Lawrence, in such a manner as you shall judge most effectual to disgrace the enemy, and for the success and honour of his Majesty's arms.

"Remember the barbarities that have been committed by the enemy's Indian Scoundrels on every occasion, where they had an opportunity of shewing their infamous cruelties on the King's subjects, which they have done without mercy. Take your revenge, but don't forget that tho' those villains have dastardly and promiscuously murdered the women and children of all ages, it is my orders that no woman or children are killed or hurt.

"When you have executed your intended service, you will return with your detachment to camp, or to join me wherever the army may be.

Your's, &c.

Camp at Crown Point,

Jeff. Amherst."

Sept. 13, 1759.

To Major Rogers,

In pursuance of the above orders, I set out the same

same evening with a detachment; and as to the particulars of my proceedings, and the great difficulties we met with in effecting our design, the reader is referred to the letter I wrote to General Amherst upon my return, and the remarks following it.

Copy of my Letter to the General upon my return from St. Francis.

" Sir,

" The twenty-second day after my departure from Crown Point, I came in sight of the Indian town St. Francis in the evening, which I discovered from a tree that I climbed, at about three miles distance. Here I halted my party, which now consisted of 142 men, officers included, being reduced to that number by the unhappy accident which befel Capt Williams*, and several since tiring, whom I was obliged to send back. At eight o'clock this evening I left the detachment, and took with me Lieut. Turner and Ensign Avery, and went to reconnoitre the town, which I did to my satisfaction,

* Capt. Williams of the Royal Regiment, was, the 5th day of my march, accidentally burnt with gunpowder, and several men hurt, which together with some sick, returned back to Crown Point, to the number of forty, after having been some time, who returned with great reluctance.

settlements on the
force, in such a man-
ner to disgrace the
honour of his Maje-

that have been
Indian towns, on
an opportunity of
the King's
one without mercy.
I forget that tho'
promiscuously mur-
der of all ages, it is my
children are killed or

your intended ser-
vice detachment to camp
army may be.

Yours, &c.

Jeff. Amherst."

orders, I set out the
same

and found the Indians in a high frolic or dance, and returned to my party at two o'clock, and at three marched to within five hundred yards of the town, where I lightened the men of their packs, and furnished them for the attack.

" At half an hour before sun-rise I surprised the town when they were all fast asleep, on the right, left, and center, which was done with so much alacrity by both the officers and men, that the enemy had not time to recover themselves, or take arms for their own defence, till they were chiefly destroyed, except some few of them who took to the water. About forty of my people pursued them, who destroyed such as attempted to make their escape that way, and sunk both them and their boats. A little after sun-rise I set fire to all their houses, except three, in which there was corn, that I reserved for the use of the party.

" The fire consumed many of the Indians who had concealed themselves in the cellars and lofts of their houses. About seven o'clock in the morning the affair was completely over, in which time we had killed at least two hundred Indians, and taken twenty of their women and children prisoners, fifteen of whom I let go their own way, and five I brought with me, viz. two Indian boys and three women.

Indian girls, I likewise took five English captives, which I also took under my care.

When I had ordered my detachment, I found I had Capt. Ogden badly wounded in his body, but not so as to hinder him from doing his duty. I had also six men slightly wounded, and one Stock-bridge Indian killed.

I ordered my people to take corn out of the reserved houses for their subsistence home, there being no other provision there; and whilst they were loading themselves I examined the prisoners and captives, who gave the following intelligence:

That a party of 200 French, and some Indians, were about four miles down the river, below us; and that our boats were way-laid, which I had reason to believe was true, as they told the exact number, and the place where I left them; that a party of 200 French and fifteen Indians, had three days before I attacked the town, gone up the river Wigwam Martinic, supposing that was the place I intended to attack; whereupon I called the officers together, to consult the safety of our return, who were of opinion there was no other way for us to return with safety, but by No. 4, on Connecticut River. I marched the detachment eight days in a body that day, and when provisions grew scarce, near Aspern Sagog Lake, I divided the detach-

detachment into small companies, putting proper guides to each, who were to assemble at the mouth of Amosook River*, as I expected provisions would be brought there for our relief, not knowing which way I should return.

Two days after we parted, Ensign Avery, of Fitch's, fell in on my track, and followed in my rear; and a party of the enemy came upon them, and took seven of his party-prisoners, two of whom that night made their escape, and came in to me next morning. Avery, with the remainder of his party joined mine, and came with me to the Cobase Intervales, where I left them with Lieut. Grant, from which place I, with Capt. Ogden, and one man more, put down the river on a small raft to this place, where I arrived yesterday; and in half an hour after my arrival dispatched provisions up the river to Lieut. Grant in a canoe, which I am pretty certain will reach him this night, and next morning sent two other canoes up the river for the relief.

* Amosook River has two branches, one of which is called the No. 4, and the other the No. 5.

† An officer upon some intelligence that I had taken refuge, was sent back to Green Point from Missisquoi Bay, to deliver that provisions might be conveyed to this place, as I had reason to believe we should be deprived of our boats, and consequently be at liberty to return the way.

relief of the other parties, loaded with provisions, to the mouth of Amonsook River,

" I shall set off to go up the river myself to-morrow, to seek and bring in as many of our men as I can find, and expect to be back in about eight days, when I shall, with all expedition, return to Crown Point. As to other particulars relative to this scout, which your Excellency may think proper to inquire after, I refer you to Capt. Ogden, who bears this, and has accompanied me all the time I have been out, behaving very well. I am, Sir, with the greatest respect,

Your Excellency's most obedient servant,

No. 4. *R. Riggs.*

Nov. 5, 1759.

To General Amherst.

I cannot forbear here making some remarks on the difficulties and distresses which attended us, in effecting this enterprise upon St. Francis, which is situated within three miles of the river St. Lawrence, in the middle of Canada, about half way between Montreal and Quebec. It hath already been mentioned, how our party was reduced by the accident which befel Capt. Williams, the fifth day of

ter our departure, and still far by numbers tiring and falling sick afterwards. .. was extremely difficult while we kept the water (and which retarded our progress very much) to pass undiscovered by the enemy, who were then cruising in great numbers upon the lake, and had prepared certain vessels on purpose to decoy any party of ours, that might come that way, armed with all manner of machines and implements for their destruction; but we happily escaped their snares of this kind, and landed (as hath been mentioned) the tenth day at Missiquay Bay. Here, that I might with more certainty know whether my boats (with which I left provisions sufficient to carry us back to Crown Point) were discovered by the enemy, I left two trusty Indians to lie at a distance in sight of the boats, and there to stay till I came back, except the enemy found them; in which latter case they were with all possible speed to follow us, and give me intelligence. It happened the second day after I left them, that these two Indians came up to me in the evening, and informed me that about 400 French had discovered and taken my boats, and that about one half of them were hotly pursuing on my track. This unhappy circumstance (it may well be supposed) put us into some consternation. Should the enemy overtake us, and we get the better of them in an encounter, yet being so far advanced into their country, where no reinforcement could

could possibly relieve us, and where they could be supported by any numbers they pleased, afforded us little hopes of escaping their hands. Our boats being taken, cut off all hope of a retreat by them; besides the loss of our provisions left with them, of which we knew we should have great need at any rate, in case we survived, was a melancholy consideration. It was, however, resolved to prosecute our design at all adventures, and, when we had accomplished it, to attempt a retreat (the only possible way we could think of) by way of No 4; and that we might not be destroyed by famine in our return, I dispatched Lieut. McMullen by land to Crown Point, to desire of the General to relieve me with provisions at Amoslook River, at the end of Cohas Intervales on Connecticut River, that being the way I should return, if at all, and the place appointed being about sixty miles from No. 4. then the most northerly English settlement. This being done, we determined if possible to outmarch our pursuers, and effect our design upon St. Francis before they could overtake us. We marched nine days through wet spongy ground; the water most of the way near a foot deep, it being a spruce bog. When we encamped at night, we had no way to secure ourselves from the water, but by cutting the boughs of trees, and with them erecting a kind of hammocks. We commonly began

our march a little before day, and continued it till after dark at night.

The tenth day after leaving Missisquey Bay, we came to a river about fifteen miles above the town of St. Francis to the South of it; and the town being on the opposite or east side of it, we were obliged to ford it, which was attended with no small difficulty, the water being five feet deep, and the current swift. I put the tallest men up the stream, and then holding by each other, we got over with the loss of several of our guns, some of which were recovered by diving to the bottom for them. We had now good dry ground to march upon, and discovered and destroyed the town as before related, which in all probability would have been effected with the loss of no man but the Indian who was killed in the action, had not my boats been discovered, and our retreat that way cut off.

This nation of Indians was notoriously attached to the French, and had for near a century past harassed the frontiers of New England, killing people of all ages and sexes in a most barbarous manner, at a time when they did not in the least suspect them; and to my own knowledge, in six years time, carried into captivity, and killed, on the before-mentioned frontiers, 400 persons. We found in the town hanging on poles over their doors, 600 scalps, mostly English.

The

and continued it till

Mistisqui Bay, we
miles above the town
it; and the town
side of it, we were
tended with no small
feet deep, and the
men up the stream, and
we got over with the
some of which were
tom for them. We
march upon, and dis-
n as before related,
I have been effected
the Indian who was
my boats been disco-
y cut off.

notoriously attached
as a century past har-
England, killing peo-
most barbarous man-
d not in the least sus-
knowledge, in six years
and killed, on the be-
persons. We found
over their doors, 600

The

The circumstances of our return are chiefly relat-
ed in the preceding letter; however it is hardly possi-
ble to describe the grief and consternation of those
of us who came to Cahah, laterales. Upon our
arrival there (after so many days tedious march over
steep rocky mountains, or through wet dirty swamps
with the terrible attendants of fatigue and hunger)
to find that here was no relief for us, where we
had encouraged ourselves that we should find it, and
have our distresses alleviated. For notwithstanding
the officer I dispatched on the general discharged
his trust with great expedition, and in nine days ar-
rived at Crown Point, which was an hundred miles
through the woods, and the General, without de-
lay, sent him, Stephens, to No. 4, with orders to
take provisions up the river to the place where I had
appointed, and there wait as long as there was any
hopes of my returning; yet the officer that was
sent being an indolent fellow, tarried at the place
but two days, when he returned, taking all the
provisions back with him, about two hours before
our arrival. Finding a fresh fire burning in his camp,
I fired guns to bring him back, which guns he
heard, but would not return, supposing we were
an enemy.

Our
* This Gentleman, for this piece of conduct, was broke by a
general court-martial, and rendered incapable of sustaining any
office in his Majesty's service for the future. A poor reward how-
ever for his conduct.

Our distress upon this occasion was truly lamentable: our spirits, greatly depressed by the hunger and fatigue we had already suffered, now almost entirely sunk within us, seeing no resource left, nor any reasonable ground to hope that we should escape a most miserable death by famine. At length I came to a resolution to push as fast as possible towards the west, leaving the remains of my party, now unable to travel farther, to get such wretched food as might be found in the barren wilderness before us, and I went on my knees to them, which I managed to do within ten days. I, with Captain Ogden, one Ranger, and a captive Indian boy, embarked upon a raft we made of dry pine logs. The current carried us down the stream in the midst of the river, where we endeavored to keep our wretched vessel by Jack paddles as we had made out of small trees, or spires split and hewed. The second day we reached White River Falls, and very narrowly escaped being carried over them by the current. Our little remains of strength however enabled us to land, and to march by them. At the bottom of the falls, where the water was most rapid, our party were now, for the distress and anguish thereby occasioned to many have men, some of which is proved fatal, they actually dying with hunger.

This was ground upon and by, which being cleaned and boiled will serve to preserve life, and the use and method of preparing which I taught to Lieut. Grant commander of the party.

these falls, while Capt. Ogden and the Ranger hunted for red squirrels for a refreshment, who had the good fortune likewise to kill a partridge. I attempted forming a new raft for our further conveyance. Being not able to cut down trees, I burnt them down, and then burnt them off at proper lengths. This was our third day's work after leaving our companions. The next day we got our materials together, and templated our raft, and floated with the stream again till we came to Watlock-quishay Falls, which are about fifty yards in length: here we landed, and by a wreath made of hazel bushes, Capt. Ogden held the raft, till I went to the bottom, prepared to swim in and board it when it came down, and if possible paddle it ashore this being our only resource for life, as we were not able to make a third raft in case we had lost this. I had the good fortune to succeed, and the next morning we embarked and floated down the stream to within a small distance of No. 4, where we found some men cutting of timber, who gave us the first relief, and assisted us to the fort, from whence I dispatched a canoe with provisions, which reached the men at Cohase four days after, which (agreeable to my engagement) was the tenth after I left them.

Two days after my arrival at No. 4 I went with other canoes, loaded with provisions, up the river myself.

myself, for the relief of others of my party that might be coming in that way*, having hired some of the inhabitants to assist me in this affair. I likewise sent expresses to Suncook and Pennecook upon Merrimack river, that any that should chance to straggle that way might be assisted; and provisions were sent up said rivers accordingly.

On my return to No. 4, I waited a few days to refresh such of my party as I had been able to collect together, and during my stay there received the following letter from General Amherst, in answer to mine of No. 5.

" SIR, *Crown Point, Nov. 8, 1759.*

" Captain Ogden delivered me your letter of the 5th instant, for which I am not only to thank you, but to assure you of the satisfaction I had on reading it; as every step you informed me you have taken, has been very well judged, and deserves my full approbation. I am sorry Lieut. Stephens judged so ill in coming away with the provisions from the place where I sent him to wait for you. An

* I met several different parties; as Lieut. Cargill, Lieut. Campbell, Lieut. Farrington, and Sergeant Evans, with their respective divisions, and sent canoes further up for the relief of such as might be still behind, and coming this way. Some I met who escaped from Dunbar's and Turner's party, who were overtaken (being upwards of twenty in number) and were mostly killed or taken by the enemy.

ers of my party that
, having hired some
in this affair. I like
and Pennecook upon
that should chance to
disturb; and provisions
dingly.

I waited a few days to
had been able to col-
my stay there received
meral Amherst, in an-

Point, Nov. 8, 1759.
ed me your letter of the
not only to thank you,
faction I had on reading
ed me you have taken,
and deserves may full ap-
ut. Stephens judged so ill
provisions from the place
or you. An

ties; as Lieut. Cargill, Lieut.
Serjeant Evans, with their re-
further up for the relief of
coming this way. Some I met
Turner's party, who were over-
in number) and were mostly kil-

" An Indian is come in last night, and said he had
left some of your party at Otter River. I sent for
them; they are come in. This afternoon four In-
dians, two Rangers, a German woman, and three
other prisoners; they quitted four of your party
some days since, and thought they had arrived
here*. I am in hopes all the rest will get in very safe.
I think there is no danger but they will, as you quit-
ed them not till having marched eight days in a bo-
dy; the only risk after that will be meeting hunt-
ing parties. I am, Sir,

Your humble servant,

To Major Rogers,

JEFF. AMHERST."

As soon as my party were refreshed, such as were
able I marched to Crown Point, where I arrived
Dec. 1, 1759, and upon examination found, that
since our leaving the ruins of St. Francis, I had lost
three Officers, viz. Lieut. Dunbar of Gage's Light
Infantry, Lieut. Turner of the Rangers, and Lieut.
Jenkins of the Provincials, and forty-six Sergeants
and privates.

The Rangers at that place were all dismissed be-
fore my return, excepting two companies, com-
manded by Captains Johnson and Tate†, with whom
I found

† Capt. Tate who had been taken prisoner, was returned by
a flag of truce, while I was gone to St. Francis.

I found orders left by the General for me to continue at that garrison during the winter, but had leave, however, to go down the country, and to wait upon his Excellency at New York.

After giving in my return to the General, and what intelligence I could of the enemy's situation, he desired me, when I had leisure, to draw a plan of my march to St. Francis; and then by his order, I returned by the way of Albany; which place I left the 6th of February 1760, with thirteen recruits I had enlisted; and the 13th, on my way between Ticonderoga and Crown Point, from whence I would have pursued them immediately; but Col. Haviland, the commanding officer there, judged it not prudent by reason the garrison at that time was very sickly, I continued at Crown Point the remainder of the winter.

On the 31st of March, Capt. James Turley, with two regular officers and six men, went out scouting, and were all made prisoners; the enemy was not pursued, on account of the sickness of the garrison.

The 10th of May was taken with a great York currency in cash, besides three and some halfpenny bank of the money lent to the works, which was afterwards returned me the remaining cash was my own, which I entirely lost.

The same day I received from General Amherst the following letter.

" Sir, New York, March 1, 1760.

" The command I have received from his Majesty, to pursue the war in this country, has determined me, if possible, to complete the companies of Rangers that were on foot last campaign; and as Captain Wait called upon me yesterday, and represented that he could easily complete the one he commands in the colony of Connecticut and the Province of the Massachusetts Bay, I have furnished him with bearing orders for that purpose, as also with a warrant for 800 dollars on account of that service.

" This day I have wrote to Capt. John Stark in New Hampshire, and Capt. David Brewer in the Massachusetts Bay, inclosing to each of them a bearing order for the respective provinces; and I herewith send you a copy of the instructions that accompany the same, by which you will see they are ordered, as fast as they get any number of men, to send them to Albany. I am, Sir,

Your humble servant,

To Major Rogers.

Jeff. Amherst.

My

My answer to the above.

SIR, Crown Point, March 15, 1760.

" I received your Excellency's letter, dated the 1st instant, together with a copy of your instructions to Capt. John Stark and Capt. David Brewer, whereby I learn that they are to be at Albany by the 1st of May next with their companies. Since I received intelligence from your Excellency that the Rangers are to be raised again, I have wrote to several of my friends in New England, who will assist them in completing their companies; and as many of the men belonging to the two companies here were frost-bitten in the winter, and others sick, many of whom I judged would not be fit for service the ensuing campaign, I employed Lieut. McCormack, of Capt. William Stark's company (that was with Major Scott) Lieut. John Fletcher, and one Holmes, and sent them recruiting the week of February for my own and Captain Johnson's company, and advanced them 100 dollars. These three recruiters I do not doubt will bring good men enough to complete us here, so that those who are frost-bitten may be sent to hospitals, and those unfit for duty discharged, or otherwise disposed of, as your Excellency shall direct.

These

There being so few Rangers fit for duty here, and those that are much wanted at this place, has prevented me from proposing any tour to the French and Indian settlements in pursuit of a prisoner, which may, I believe, be easily got at any time, if sent for. I am, Sir,

Your Excellency's

most obedient humble servant,

R. Rogers."

To General Amherst.

A letter from General Amherst,

" SIR, New York, 9th March, 1760.

" As I have not heard that either of the Jacobuses, who each commanded a company of Stockbridge Indians the last campaign, are returned from their captivity, I would have you write (if you think Lieut. Solomon capable of and fit for such a command) to him, to know if he chuses to accept of the same; but it must be upon condition of bringing to the field none but good men, that are well inclined, and that are hale and strong. Whatever number he or any of his friends can raise that will answer this description, I will readily employ this

above.

March 15, 1760.

Y's letter, dated the
y of your instructi-
apt. David Brewer,
n be at Albany by
companies. Since
ur Excellency that
gain, I have wrote
England, who will
companies; and as
the two companies
winter, and others
would not be fit for
I employed Lieut.
m Stark's company
aint: John Fletcher,
a recruiting the 20th
t Captain Johnson's
1500 dollars. These
t will bring good
here, so that those
ent to hospitals, and
ed; or otherwise dis-
shall direct.

These

this summer, and they shall meet with all the encouragement their services shall merit. All others that are too old or too young, I shall reject, nor shall I make them any allowance of payment, altho' they should join the army; so that, in order to prevent his having any difference with these people, it will behove him to engage none but what shall be esteemed fit for the service; he must also observe to be assembled with them at Albany by the 1st of May at furthest, from which day he and they shall be entitled to their pay, that is, for so many as shall be mustered there, and for no more; he must likewise take care that every man comes provided with a good firelock, and that they be always ready to march at a moment's warning, wherever they are ordered to, in default of which they shall forfeit their pay that shall be due to them at that time. All this you will explain to him particularly, and so soon as you receive his answer, inform me thereof. As an encouragement to enter the service upon the foregoing conditions, you may assure him also, that if he conforms to them in every respect, and that he and his men prove useful, they shall be better rewarded than they have yet been.

" Capt. Ogden having solicited me for a company of Rangers, assured me that he could raise and complete a very good one in the Jerseys; I have given

given him a beating order for that purpose, and instructions similar to those I sent you a copy of in my last for Captains Stark and Brewer, and have also granted him a warrant for four hundred dollars, on account of the bounty-money, to be as usual stopped out of the first warrant for the subsistence of that company. I am, Sir,

Your humble servant,

To Major Rogers, *Jeff. Ambers.*

My Letter to the General.

Crown Point, 20th March, 1766.

Sir,

" I observe the contents of your Excellency's letter of the 19th, and shall take particular care to let Lieut. Solomon know every circumstance relative to his being employed the next summer, and to advise your Excellency as soon as I hear from him. He has already informed me he would be glad to engage with some Indians.

" Mr. Stuart, the Adjutant of the Rangers, who is at Albany, I have desired to go to Stockbridge, to deliver Solomon his orders, and to explain them properly to him. " I am

" I am heartily glad that your Excellency hath been pleased to give to Capt. Ogden a company of the Rangers, who, from the good character he bears, I doubt not will answer your expectations.

" Inclosed is a sketch of my travels to and from St. Francis. I am, Sir,

Your Excellency's most humble servant,

To General Amherst. *R. Rogers."*

The General's Letter to me.

" Sir, *New York, 9th April, 1760.*

" I am to own the receipt of your letters of the 23th and 20th ultimo, and to approve what you therein mention to have done for completing your and Capt. Johnson's company; as also your having sent Adjutant Stuart to Stockbridge, to deliver Solomon his orders, and to explain them properly to him. This will avoid all mistakes, and enable you the sooner to inform me of Solomon's intentions, which I shall be glad to know as soon as possible.

" I thank you for your sketch of your travels to and from St. Francis, and am, Sir,

Your very humble servant,

To Major Rogers. *J. Amherst."*
Soon.

our Excellency hath
Ogden a company of
a good character he
your expectations.

travels to and from

most humble servant,

R. Rogers."

letter to me.

York, 9th April, 1760.

of your letters of the

to approve what you

for completing your

as also your having

Stockbridge, to deliver So-

plain them properly to

mistakes, and enable you

Solomon's intentions,

now as soon as possible.

Sketch of your travels to

am, Sir,

most humble servant,

Jeff. Amherst."

Soon

Soon after this I had the pleasure of informing the General that the Stockbridge Indians determined to enter the service this year; but as many of them were out a hunting, that they could not be collected at Albany before the 10th of May; and that the recruits of the ranging companies began to assemble at Crown Point.

May 4, 1760. This day Serjeant Beverly, who had been taken prisoner, and made his escape, came in seven days from Montreal to Crown Point. He had lived at the Governor's (Monsieur de Vaudreuil) house, and brought the following intelligence, which I immediately transmitted to the General, viz.

" That about the 10th of April, the enemy withdrew all their troops from Nut Island, excepting 300, which they left there to garrison the place, under the command of Monsieur Bonville; that the enemy also brought from the island one half of the ammunition they had there, and half of the cannon: that the enemy had two frigates, one of 36 guns, the other of 20 guns, that lay all winter in the river St. Lawrence, and some other small vessels, such as row-galleys, &c. that all the troops of France in Canada went down to Jecorty the 20th of April, except those left to garrison their

their fort, which was very slenderly done, together with all the militia that could be spared out of the country, leaving only one man to two females to sow their grain, where they were assembled by Monsieur Levy, their General, with an intent to retake Quebec * : that ninety six men of the enemy were drowned going down to Jecorty : that he saw a man who was taken prisoner the 13th of April, belonging to our troops at Quebec : that this man told him our garrison there was healthy ; and that Brigadier General Murray had 4000 men fit for duty in the city, besides a post of 300 men at Point Levy, which the enemy attempted to take possession of in the month of February last, with a considerable body of troops, and began to fortify a church at or near the Point, but that General Murray sent over a detachment of about 1000 men, which drove the enemy from the post, and took a Captain, with about thirty French soldiers, prisoners, and fortified the church for his own convenience : that the General has another post on the north-side of the river at Laurat, a little distance from the town, in which he keeps 300 men : that there is a line of block-houses well fortified all round the land-side of the town, under cover of the canon :

* This place, the capital of all Canada, had been taken by the English troops last year, under the command of General Wolfe.

underly done, together
 be spared out of the
 man to two females to
 y were assembled by
 ral, with an intent to
 y six men of the ene-
 n to Jecorty: that he
 prisoner the 13th of
 s at Quebec: that this
 ere was healthy; and
 ray had 4000 men fit
 a post of 300 men at
 my attempted to take
 February last, with a
 and began to fortify a
 int, but that General
 ent of about 1000 men,
 n the post, and took a
 French soldiers, priso-
 ch for his own conve-
 as another post on the
 aurat, a little distance
 e keeps 300 men: that
 e well fortified all round
 under cover of the can-
 non:

all Canada, had been taken by
 der the command of General

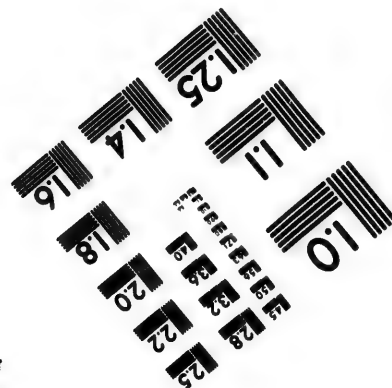
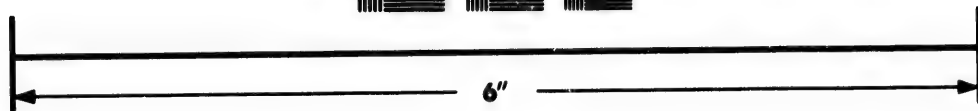
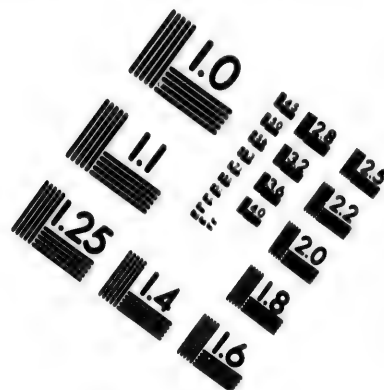
non: that a breast-work of fraziere is extended
 from one block-house to another, as far as those
 houses extend: that they heard at Quebec of the
 enemy's coming, but were not in the least con-
 cerned: that a detachment from Quebec surprised
 two of the enemy's guards, at a place called Point
 de Treamble, each guard consisting of fifty men,
 and killed or took the most part of them. One of
 those guards were all grenadiers."

He moreover reports, "That two more of our
 frigates had got up the river, and that two more
 men of war were near the Island of Orleans: that
 the French told him that there was a fleet of ten
 sail of men of war seen at Gaspee Bay, with some
 transports, but put back to sea again on account of
 the ice: but as they had up different colours, they
 could not tell whether they were French or English;
 that the beginning of May the enemy was to draw
 off 2000 of their men to Net Island, and as many
 more to Oswagotchy: he heard that they did not
 intend to attack Quebec, except the French fleet
 gets up the river before ours: that 100 Indians
 were to come this way, and set out about the fifth
 of May: the remainder of the Indians were at pre-
 sent gone to Jecorty: that General Levy, the
 Attawawas, and Cold Country Indians, will all be
 in Canada by the beginning of June, ten Sachems
 being sent by the French last fall, to call those na-
 tions

tions to their assistance; that a great number had deserted to the French from the battalion of Royal Americans at Quebec, which the French have engaged in their service; but that they were to be sent off, under the care of Monsieur Boarbier, up to Attawawas River, to the French colony betwixt the lakes and the Mississippi River: that the most part of the enemies Indians are intent on going there; and that a great number of French, especially those who have money, think to save it by carrying it to New Orleans: that he saw at Montreal two Rangers, Reynolds and Hall, that were returned by Col. Haviland deserted last fall: that they were taken prisoners near River-head Block-house, when after cattle: that two more Rangers are to be here in ten days with fresh intelligence from Montreal, if they can possibly make their escape: that Monsieur Longee, the famous partisan, was drowned in the river St. Laurence, a few days after he returned with the party that took Captain Tute: that the Indians have a great eye to No. 4 roads, as they say they can get sheep and oxen coming here from that place: that he heard Gen. Murray had hanged several Canadians lately, that were carrying ammunition out of Quebec to the enemy: that the two Captains Jacobs are still in Canada; the one taken with Capt. Kennedy is on board a vessel in irons, the other ran away last fall, but

at a great number had
the battalion of Royal
the French have en-
that they were to be
Monsieur Boarblat, up
French colony betwixt
River: that the most
are intent on going
mber of French, espe-
y, think to save it by
that he saw at Mon-
de and Hall, that were
defected last fall: that
near River-head Block-
that two more Rangers
with fresh intelligence
possibly make their ef-
the famous partisan,
St. Laurence, a few days
party that took Captain
ve a great eye to No. 4.
an get sheep and oxen
ce: that he heard Gen.
Canadian lately, that
out of Quebec to the
ptains Jacobs are still in
ith Capt. Kennedy is on
other ran away last fall,
but





Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1985

I

but returned, having froze his feet, and is at Montreal."

A few days after this, I went down the Lake Champlain, to reconnoitre Nut Island, and the garrison there, the landing places, &c. On my return from that service to Crown Point, I had an order from Gen. Amherst to repair to Albany, the head-quarter, as fast as possible.

I set out, in obedience to this order, the 19th of May, and waited upon the General at Albany the 29th, and gave him all the information I could, in regard to the passage into Canada by the Island de Noir, or Nut Island, and likewise that by Oswego and La Galette.

The General being acquainted by an express, that Quebec was then besieged by the French, informed me of his intentions of sending me with a party into Canada, and if the siege of Quebec was continued, to destroy their country as far as possible, and by constantly marching from one place to another, to draw off the enemy's troops, and prevent the siege till our vessels got up the river. He strongly recommended, and ordered me to govern myself according to the motions of the French army; to retreat if they had raised the siege; and in case of success, or otherwise, I should find the

the siege still going on, to harass the country, tho' it were at the expence of my party. I had at the same time the following instructions from him in writing.

"Major Rogers, you are to take under your command a party of 300 men, composed of 273 Rangers, with their proper officers, and a subaltern, two serjeants, and twenty-five men of the light infantry regiments, with which detachment you will proceed down the lake, under cover of the brig, where you will fix upon the safest and best place for laying up your boats, which I imagine one of the islands will best answer, while you are executing the following services.

"You will with 200 men land on the west side, in such manner that you may get to St. John's (without the enemy or the Indians knowing any intelligence of it) where you will try to surprise the fort, and destroy the vessels, boats, provisions, or whatever else may be there for the use of the troops at the Isle au Noir. You will then march to Port Charles, where you will do the same; and you will destroy every magazine you can find in that part; from which destruction I expect the Indians will soon be known to the Isle au Noir, and you must take care not to be too off to
your

your retreat; for which reason, when you have done all you think practicable on the western-side, I judge your best and safest retreat will be, to cross the river and march back the east-side of Isle au Noix. When you land on the west-side, you will send each officer with the fifty Rangers, as you think will best answer their intended service, which is, to march for Wigwam Martinique, to destroy what he may find there and on the east-side of the river, and afterwards to join you, or to retreat in such manner as you will direct him. You will take such provisions as you judge necessary with you, and fix with Capt. Grant (who shall have orders to wait for your return) the places where he may look out for you when you come back.

You will take your men as light with you as possible, and give them all the necessary caution for the conduct, and their obedience to their officers; no firing without order, no unnecessary alarms, no retreating without an order; they are to stick by one another and nothing can hurt them; let every man whose fire-lock will carry it have a bayonet; you are not to suffer the Indians to destroy women or children, no plunder to be taken to lord your men, who shall be rewarded at their return as they deserve.

May 25, 1760.

Jess. Amherst.

H

With

With the above instructions the General delivered me a letter directed to General Murray at Quebec, desiring me to convey it to him in such manner as I thought would be quickest and safest.

Having received these instructions I returned to Crown-Point as fast as possible, and about the beginning of June set out from thence with a party of two hundred and fifty men^e down Lake Champlain, having four vessels, on board of which this detachment embarked, putting our boats and provisions into them, that the enemy might have less opportunity of discovering our design.

The 3d, I landed Lieut. Holmes with fifty men in Mistisqui Bay, and gave him proper directions agreeable to my orders from the General, informing him that one of the sloops should cruise for him till his return, which upon signals that were given him would take him on board, upon which he was to join me or wait on board till my return, as the situation of affairs might direct him. Here likewise I sent the letter I had received from the Ge-

^e The Stockbridge Indians who had been embarked, had now marched from Albany, and who were to be a part of the detachment of 300, agreeable to the General's orders, had not arrived at Crown Point at the time of my embarkation, but were ordered to follow after and join me.

the General deliver-
 eral Murray at Que-
 to him in such man-
 ner and safest.

utions I returned to
 le, and about the be-
 nance with a party of
 own Lake Champlain,
 of which this detach-
 boats and provisions
 ight have less oppor-
 tunity.

plines with fifty men
 um proper directions
 the General, inform-
 should cruise for him
 male that were given
 upon which he was
 till my return, as the
 ed him. Here like-
 received from the Ge-

ed been undertaken, and how
 to be a part of the detach-
 ment's orders, had not arrived
 immediately, but were ordered

neral to Brigadier Murray, through the woods, and
 gave the following instructions to the Officer I in-
 trusted with it, viz.

Instructions for Serjeant Beverly of his Majesty's
 Rangers.

" You are hereby directed to take under your
 command, these three men, viz. John Shute,
 Luzford Goodwin, and Joseph Eastman, and march
 them from Missisquoi Bay, to which place you will
 be conveyed by Lieut. Holmes with a party I have
 sent there for a particular purpose; you are to land
 in the night time, as otherwise you may be disco-
 vered by a party from the Isle au Noir; you will
 steer your course about north-east, and make all the
 dispatch you possibly can with the letter in your
 charge to Quebec, or to the English army at or near
 that place, and deliver it to Brigadier Murray, or
 to the officer commanding his Majesty's forces in or
 upon the river St. Lawrence. A sketch of the
 country will be delivered you with these orders,
 that you may the better know the considerable ri-
 vers you have to cross, betwixt Missisquoi Bay and
 Quebec. The Distances are marked in the draught,
 as is the road I travelled in last fall, from Missisquoi
 Bay to St. Francis, which road you will cross several
 times, if you will keep the course I before di-
 rected. The rivers are so plainly marked in the
 plan

plan, that you will know them when you come to them. The river St. Francis is about half way of your journey, and is very still water, and may be easily rafted where you cross it; but lower down it is so swift and rapid that you must not attempt it. Shedoir River you will likewise be obliged to pass on a raft; it is swift water for some miles from its mouth; you had better examine it well before you attempt to cross it. As soon as you pass this river, bear your course about east, leaving Point Levy on your left hand, and fall in with the river St. Lawrence, near the lower end of the island of Orleans, as it may be possible that General Murray may have encamped the army either at the Isle of Orleans or the Isle of Quyon; therefore you are not to depend on finding at once the exact place of his encampment; but are positively ordered to look out for the English fleet, and the first line of battle ship you see, you are to venture on board, as I think it not possible the enemy should have any large ships there, and whatever English ship you get on board of, I will convey you directly to General Murray, when you will deliver him the verbal message I told you. You may apply to the general for fifty pounds who will pay it to you, and also give you proper directions to join them as soon as you have rested yourself from your march. I wish you a good journey, and am, I am sure, your most Obedient Servant.

To Sir John Boscawen of his Majesty's Fleet.

As

when you come to
is about half way of
water, and may be
it; but lower down
you must not attempt
otherwise be obliged to
for some miles from
examine it well before
on as you pass this ri-
st, leaving Point Le-
in with the river St.
of the island of Or-
that General Murray
either at the risk of
therefore you are not
the exact place of his
only ordered to look out
first line of battle ship
on board, as I think
old have any large ships
ship you get on board
to General Murray,
a verbal message I told
general for fifty pounds
I also give you proper
you have rested your-
ish you a good journey,
etc, etc.

As

As soon as I had dispatched the two parties before-
mentioned, I, with the remainder, crossed Lake
Champlain to the west side, and the 4th in the morn-
ing got into my boats, and landed with about 200
men, about twelve miles south of the island Nois,
with an intent to put in execution the General's or-
ders to me of May 5th with all speed. Capt. Grant
sent the two sloops to attend, which I ordered to
cruise further down the lake than where I landed,
and nearer to their fort, to command the attention
of the enemy till I could get into their country. I
lay still all the 5th, there being a heavy rain, and
the bushes so wet that both we and our provisions
would have been greatly exposed by a march.

In the afternoon of this day, several French boats
appeared on the Lake, which were discovered by
the two sloops, as well as by my party on the shore.
These boats continued as near as they could to our
vessels without endangering themselves till after
dark. Concluding their boats would cruise the
whole night to watch the motions of our sloops, I
imagined it would be a prudent step to send the sloops
back to Capt. Grant, the commander of these ves-
sels, who lay near Mont Island; accordingly
went to the sloops in a boat after dark, and ordered
them to return. The enemy, who kept all night
in their boats, having by a strict look-out, discover-
ed where I landed, sent a detachment from the is-
land

land next morning to cut off my party. I discovered their intentions by my reconnoirring parties, who counted them as they crossed from the fort in the morning in their boats, to the west-shore, and informed me that they were 350 in number. I had intelligence again when they were about a mile from us. Half after eleven they attacked me very briskly on my left, having on my right a bog, which they did not venture over, thro' which, however, by the edge of the lake, I sent seventy of my party to get round and attack them in the rear. This party was commanded by Lieut. Farrington. As soon as he began his attack, I pushed them in the front, which broke them immediately. I pursued them with the greatest part of my people about a mile, where they retired to a thick cedar swamp, and divided into small parties. By this time it rained again very hard. I called my party immediately together at the boats, where I found that Ensign Wood of the 17th regiment was killed, Capt. Johnson wounded through the body, a second shot thro' his left arm, and a third in his head. I had two men of the Light Infantry, and eight Rangers wounded, and sixteen Rangers killed. We killed forty of the enemy, and recovered about fifty firelocks. Their commanding officer, Monsieur la Force, was mortally hurt, and several of the party were likewise wounded. After the action I got the killed and wounded of my detachment together in battoes.

party. I discovered
 onnoiring parties,
 and from the fort in
 the west-shore, and
 in number. I had
 were about a mile
 attacked me very
 right a bog, which
 which, however,
 venty of my party to
 the rear. This per-
 arrington. As soon
 them in the front,
 y. I pursued them
 people about a mile,
 edar swamp, and di-
 this time it rained a-
 party immediately to-
 I found that Ensign
 was killed, Capt.
 body, a second shot
 in his head. I had
 y, and eight Rangers
 killed. We killed
 about fifty fire-
 officer, Monsieur la
 several of the party
 the action I got the
 achment together in
 battoes.

battoes, returned with them to the Isle a Mot, near
 which the brig lay. I dispatched one of the vessels
 to Crown Point, on board of which was put the
 corpse of Mr. Wood, but Capt. Johnson died on
 his passage thither; this vessel I ordered to bring
 more provisions. I buried the rest of the dead on an
 island, and then began to prepare for a second land-
 ing; being joined about this time by the Stock-
 bridge Indian Company, I was determined at all ad-
 ventures to pursue my orders, settled the plan of
 landing, and left the following instructions with
 Capt. Grant, viz.

" You will be so good as to fall down the lake
 with your vessels as soon as possible, as far as the
 Wind Mill Point, or near where you lay at anchor
 the last time I was with you, and cruise near it for
 two or three days, which will be the only method
 I can think of that has any appearance of attracting
 the attention of the enemy till I get into their coun-
 try; as soon as I observe or think you pretty near
 the Wind Mill Point, I shall land with my party
 on the west-side opposite to the north-end of the
 Isle a Mot, in the river that runs into the bay
 which forms itself there, and from thence proceed
 to execute the General's orders. If they do not
 attack me in my march till I complete my design,
 you may be certain I shall come back on the east-
 side, and endeavour to join you near the Wind
 Mill

Mill Point, or betwixt that and the Isle a Mor. When I arrive, the signal that I will make for your discovering me, will be a smock and three guns, at a minute's interval each from the other, and repeated a second time, in half an hour after the first; but if the enemy should attack me on my march before I get to the place I am ordered, which I believe they will do, in case I am worried I shall be obliged to come back on the west side, and shall make the before mentioned signal betwixt the Isle a Mor and the place where I had the battle with the enemy the 5th instant. It is uncertain when I shall be at either shore, so that I would recommend it to you not to come back south of the Isle a Mor till my return, as a contrary wind might prevent your getting in with your vessels to relieve me. I send you Serjeant Hacket and ten Rangers, to be with you in my absence, as we this day agreed. If Lieutenant Darey comes down in season to go with me, I shall leave Ensign Wilson with you; but if Darey should not come till after I land, you'll be pleased to take him under your direction, as well as all those that may come with him to join me, who I would recommend it not to send any party to the island, to take a prisoner, till the fifth day after my landing, as the loss of a man from us may be of very bad consequence. Lieut. Holmes has appointed between the eleventh and sixteenth day after his landing for his return to Missisquay Bay, and from the

the eleventh to the sixteenth, as before mentioned; I should be glad the sloop might cruise for him at the place he appointed to meet her. I am, Sir,

Your humble servant,

R. Rogers."

I cannot but observe with pleasure, that Mr. Grant, like an able officer, very diligently did all that could be expected of him for the good of the service, carefully attending with his effects till my return from this second excursion, on which I embarked with two hundred and twenty men, officers included, and landed the 9th of June, about midnight, on the west shore opposite the Isle a Mot, from thence marched as fast as possible to St. John's, and came to the road that leads from it to Montreal, about two miles from the fort, the evening of the 15th. At eleven o'clock this night, I marched with an intent to surprise the fort, to within four hundred yards of it, where I halted to reconnoitre, which I did, and found they had more men than I expected. The number of the centries within the fort were seventeen, and so well fixed, that I thought it was impossible for me to take the place by surprise, especially as they had seen me, and fired several guns accordingly. I left it at two o'clock, and marched down the river to St. John's.

(refe; at break of day I reconnoitred this place, and found that the enemy had in it a stockaded fort, defensible against small arms. I observed two large store-houses in the inside, and that the enemy were carting hay into the fort. I waited for an opportunity when the cart had just entered the gate-way, run forward, and got into the fort before they could clear the way for shutting the gate. I had at this time sent different parties to the several houses, about fifteen in number, which were near the fort, and were all surprised at the same instant of time, and without firing a single gun. We took in the fort twenty-four soldiers, and in the houses seventy-eight prisoners, women and children included; some young men made their escape to Chamblee. I examined the prisoners, and found I could not proceed to Chambles with any prospect of success; therefore concluded my best way was to burn the fort and village, which I did, together with a considerable magazine of hay, and some provisions, with every battee and canoe, except eight battoes which I kept to cross the river, and these we afterwards cut to pieces: we also killed their cattle, horses &c. destroyed their waggons, and every other thing which we thought could ever be of service to the enemy. When this was done, I sent back the women and children, and gave them a pass to go to Montreal, directed to the several officers of the different detachments under my command.

voitred this place, and
 a stockaded fort, de-
 I observed two large
 that the enemy were
 waited for an oppor-
 entered the gate-way,
 fort before they could
 e gate. I had at this
 the several houses, a-
 ch were near the fort,
 same instant of time,
 un. We took in the
 in the houses seventy-
 and children included;
 or escape to Chamblee.
 and found I could not
 my prospect of success;
 way was to burn the
 t, together with a con-
 and some provisions,
 e, except eight battoes
 river, and these we al-
 also killed their cattle,
 waggons, and every o-
 ht could ever be of ser-
 in this was done, I sent
 men, and gave them a
 rected to the several of-
 cements under my com-
 mand.

mand. I continued my march on the east side of
 Lake Champlain, and when passing by Missisquoi
 Bay, opposite the Isle au Noix, my advance-party,
 and the advance-party of about 800 French, that
 were out after me from their fort, engaged with
 each other; but the body of the enemy, be-
 ing about a mile behind their advance-party,
 retreated, to my great satisfaction. I pursued my
 march with all possible speed: and the same day,
 being the 30th day of June, arrived at the lake op-
 posite where the vessels lay; and as I had sent a
 few men forward to repeat the signals, the boats
 met us at the shore. We directly put on board,
 the enemy soon after appeared on the shore where
 we embarked. I had not at this time any account
 from Lieutenant Holmes, either by prisoners or o-
 therways.

Upon examination the prisoners reported, some
 of them had been at the siege of Quebec: "that
 the French had lost five hundred men there; and
 that they retreated after twelve days bombarding
 and cannonading, and came to Jack's quarters,
 where General Levy left five hundred men, being
 composed of a picquet of each battalion of the ar-
 my, and that there were four hundred Canadians
 who staid voluntarily with them; that the rest of
 the army was quartered by two's and three's on
 the inhabitants, from there to St. John's. In
 Montreal there are about a hundred and fifty troops,
 and the inhabitants do duty. That in Chamblee
 Fort.

Fort are about one hundred and fifty men, including workmen; and the remnant of the Queen's regiment are in the village. That there are twelve cannon at St. John's, and about three hundred men, including workmen, who are obliged to take arms on any alarm. That at the Ile au Noix are about eight hundred stationed, besides the scouts between that and Montreal. That there are about a hundred pieces of cannon there. This is the substance of their report, in which they all agree, and which, with an account of my proceedings, I transmitted to the General.

On the 21st I put the twenty-six prisoners on board one of the vessels, with fifty men of my detachment, and ordered her to proceed to Crown Point, and tarried with the other vessels to cover Mr. Holmes's retreat, who joined us the same evening, without having succeeded in his enterprise, mistaking his way by following down a river that falls into Seneca, instead of that called Wigwaga. He returned, which surprised us, into St. Lawrence at Kahn. St. Paul, arrived at Crown Point the 25th of June, and accompanied my Rangers on the 28th. More, opposed the fort.

The following letter I received from General Amherst, dated at Canajoharry, June 26, 1756.

"Sir, I have the honor to inform you that Colonel Boscawen sent me your letter of the 21st inst. in relation to the Seneca Indians."

21, which I received last night, and saw with pleasure, you was returned without the loss of a man of your party, and that you had done every thing that was prudent for you to attempt with the number of men you had under your command. From the situation the enemy is now in, by being forced back to their former quarters, on Governor Murray's having obliged them to abandon their cannon, and raise the siege of Quebec, I hope Lieutenant Holmes will return with equal success as you have done. I am, Sir,

Your humble servant,

To Major Rogers.

Jess. Amherst.

I remained at Crown point with my people without effecting any thing considerable, more than in small parties reconnoitring the country about the fort, while every thing was got in readiness for embarking the army the 10th of August; which was done accordingly, having one brig, three sloops, and four pinnaces, which latter were occupied by the royal train of artillery, commanded by Lieut. Colonel Ord. Our order of march was as follows, viz. Six Hundred Rangers and seventy Indians in whale boats in the front, commanded by Major Rogers as an advance-guard for the whole army, all

all in a line a-breast, about half a mile a-head of the main body, followed by the light infantry and grenadiers in two columns, two boats a-breast in each column, commanded by Col. Darby. The right wing was composed of Provincials, commanded by Brigadier Ruggles, who was second in command of the whole army. The left was made up, of New Hampshire and Boston troops, commanded by Col. Thomas. The seventeenth and twenty-seventh regiments, with some few of the Royals, that formed the center column, were commanded by Major Campbell of the 17th regiment. Col. Haviland was in the front of these divisions, between that and the light infantry, and grenadiers. The royal artillery followed the columns, and was commanded by Colonel Ord, who had for his escort, one Rhode Island regiment of Provincials. The sailors, &c. followed the artillery. In this manner we rowed down the lake forty miles the first day, putting ashore where there was good landing on the west-side, and there encamped.

The day following we lay by. The 18th, the wind blowing fresh at south, orders were given for embarking, and the same day reached a place on the west shore, within ten miles of the Isle à la Puce, where the army encamped. It having blown a fresh gale most part of the day, some of my boats (the

mile a-head of the
 ht infantry and gre-
 ate a-bread in each
 berby. The right
 als, commanded by
 ond in command of
 a made up, of New
 commanded by Col.
 and twenty-seventh
 Royal, that forme-
 commanded by Major
 at. Col. Haviland
 e, between that and
 rs. The royal ar-
 ind was commanded
 for his effect, one
 vincial. The fat-
 In this manner we
 es the first day, put-
 good landing on the
 y. The 18th, the
 orders were given for
 reached a place on
 es of the Isle à Mot,
 having blown a fresh
 ne of my boats into

by the violence of the waves, and ten of my Ran-
 gers were thereby drowned.

The 19th we set sail again early in the morning,
 and that night encamped on the north-end of the
 Isle à Mot.

The 20th, before day, the army was under way,
 with intention to land, having but twenty miles
 to go, and having the advantage of a fair wind, we
 soon came in sight of the French fort, and about ten
 in the morning Col. Derby, with the grenadiers and
 Light Infantry, and myself with the Rangers, land-
 ed on the east shore, and marched and took posses-
 sion of the ground opposite the fort on that side,
 without the least opposition. Having done this,
 an officer was sent to acquaint Col. Haviland (who,
 with the remainder of the army, was at the place
 where we landed), that there was not the least dan-
 ger to apprehend from the enemy. The next day
 we began to raise batteries, and soon after to throw
 some shells into the garrison. About the 22th a
 proposal was made for taking the enemy's vessels,
 three of which were at anchor a little below the
 fort, and some of their videttes likewise. It was
 introduced by Col. Derby, who was ordered to
 take the command of the party appointed for this
 service, which consisted of two companies of Reg-
 ulars.

galley, and four companies of my rangers, with the Indians. We carried with us two howitzers and one six-pounder, and silently conveying them along shore the place, brought them opposite the vessels, and began a brisk fire upon them, before they were in the least apprised of our design and, by good fortune, the first shot from the six-pounder cut the cable of the great ridgale, and the wind being with, blew her to the east shore, where we were, and the other vessels weighed anchor and made for St. John's, but got little ground, in turning a point about two miles below the fort. I was, by Col. Darby, ordered down to the east shore with my Rangers, and crossed a river about thirty yards wide, which falls into Lake Champlain from the east. I soon got opposite the vessels, and by firing from the shore, gave an opportunity to some of my party to swim on board with their muskets, and took one of the vessels; in the mean time Col. Darby had got on board the ridgale, and had her hoisted, and took the other two; of which success he immediately acquainted Col. (Bathurst) who sent down a sufficient number of men to take charge of and man the vessels, and ordered the remainder of the Rangers, Light Infantry and Grenadiers, to join the army that night, which was accordingly done; and about midnight the night following the French troops left the island, and landed.

posed safe on the main, so that next morning nothing of them was to be seen but a few sick, and Col. Haviland took possession of the fort.

The second day after the departure of Monsieur Beville and his troops from the island, Mr. Haviland sent me with my Rangers to pursue him as far as St. John's Fort, which was about twenty miles farther down the lake, and on that place I was to wait the coming of the army, but by no means to follow farther than the fort, nor run at the risk of advancing farther to Montreal. I went in the evening and about day-light got to St. John's, and found it just as we found it. I pursued, and took two prisoners, who reported that Monsieur Beville was to encamp that night about half-way on the road to Montreal, and that he wrote from St. John's about nine o'clock the night before, but that many of their men were sick, and that they thought some of the troops would not reach the place appointed till the middle of the afternoon. It being now about seven in the morning, I set all hands to work, except proper guards, to fortify the house that stood near the lake side, in order that some of my people might come and harass, while I, with the commissary, followed Monsieur Beville, and about eight o'clock I got so well fortified, that I ventured our boats and baggage under

der the care of 200 Rangers, and took with me 400, together with the two companies of Indians, and followed after the French army, which consisted of about 1500 men, and about 100 Indians, they had to guard them. I was resolved to make his dance a little the morrow, and pursued with such haste, that I overtook his rear-guard about two miles before they got to their encamping ground. I immediately attacked them, who, not being above 200, suddenly broke, and then fled for the main body, which I very eagerly pursued, but in good order, expecting Monsieur Beville would have made a stand, which however he did not chuse, but pushed forward to get to the river, where they were to encamp, and having crossed it, pulled up the bridge, which put a stop to my march, not judging it prudent to cross at a disadvantage, inasmuch as the enemy had a good breast-work on the other side, of which they took possession; in this pursuit, however, we considerably lessened their number, and returned in safety.

In the evening Mr. Herbold came in sight, and landed at St. John's. As soon as he came on shore, I waited upon him, and acquainted him with what I had done, &c. and then I had some prisoners for him; he said it was very well, and ordered his troops there that night, and next day went down the

ts, and took with me
companies of Indians,
th army, which con-
and about 100 Indians,
was resolved to make
lar, and pursued with
his rear-guard about
t to their encamping
thod them, who, not
waken, and then stood
very eagerly pursued,
ing Monsieur Beauville
which however he did not
get to the river, where
having crossed it, put
as a stop to my march,
th at a disadvantage, in-
posed breast-work on the
took possession; in this
decisively lessened their
safety.

and came in sight, and
on in his canoe on shore,
accompanied him with
his Indian prisoners
very well, and returned his
and next day went down
the

the river Sorriol, as far as St. d'Etrale, where he
encamped, and made a strong breast-work, to de-
fend his people from being surprised. I was sent
down the river Sorriol, to bring the inhabitants un-
der subjection to his Britannick Majesty, and went
into their settled country in the night, took all their
priests and militia officers, and sent some of them
for the inhabitants. The first day I caused all the
inhabitants near Chamblos to take the oaths of al-
legiance, &c. who appeared glad to have it in their
power to take the oaths and keep their possessions;
and were all extremely submissive. Having obliged
them to bring in their arms, and fulfilled my in-
structions in the best manner I could, I joined Col.
Dorby at Chamblos, who came there to take the
fort, and had brought with him some light cannon.
It soon surrendered, as the garrison consisted only
of about fifty men. This happened on the first of
September.

On the 14, our army having nothing to do, and ha-
ving good intelligence both from Gen. Amherst
and Gen. Murray, Mr. Haviland sent me to join
the latter, while he marched with the rest of the ar-
my for La Platte. The 5th in the morning I got to
Longueville, some four miles below Montreal, op-
posite where Brigadier Murray lay, and gave him
notice

notice of my arrival, but not till the morning of the 26th, by reason of my arrival so late.

By the time I came to Longville the army under the command of Gen. Amherst, had landed about two miles from the town, where they encamped; and early this morning Monsieur de Vau-
 sail, the governor and commander in chief of all Canada, sent out to capitulate with our General, which put a stop to all our movements, till the 6th of September, when the articles of capitulation were agreed to, and signed, and our troops took possession of the town-gates that night. Next morning the Light Infantry, and Grenadiers of the whole army, under the command of Col. Holdiman, with a company of the royal artillery, with two pieces of cannon, and some muzzlers, entered the town, re-taking the English colours belonging to Pepperell's and Shirley's regiments which had been taken by the French at Oswego.

Thus at length, at the end of the fifth campaign, Montreal and the whole country of Canada was given up, and became subject to the King of Great Britain; consequently perhaps of the greatest importance that is to be met with in the British annals; whether we consider the prodigious extent of country we are hereby made masters of, the vast addition it must make to trade and navigation, or the security

not till the morning of
arrival so late.

Longville the army un-
der Amherst, had landed
on, where they encoun-
tered Monsieur de Vau-
mont, commander in chief of all
the French with our General,
and on the 8th of Sep-
tember, the British troops
of expedition were
our troops took possession
of the town. Next morning
the French, under the command
of Col. Mifflin, with a
party, with two pieces of
artillery, entered the town, re-
siding to Peppercorn's
which had been taken by

and of the fifth campaign,
the King of Great
Britain, the greatest impor-
tance in the British annals,
the odious extent of our
losses of, the vast addi-
tion and navigation, or the
security

security it must afford to the northern provinces of
America, particularly those flourishing ones of New
England and New York the irretrievable loss France
sustains hereby, and the importance it must give the
British crown among the several states of Europe;
all this, I say, duly considered, will, perhaps, in
its consequences render the year 1760 more glori-
ous than any preceding.

And to this acquisition, had we, during the late
war, either by conquest or treaty, added the fertile
and extensive country of Louisiana, we should have
been possessed of perhaps the most valuable territory
upon the face of the globe, attended with more
real advantages than the so-much-boasted mines of
Mexico and Peru, and would have for ever depriv-
ed the French, those treacherous rivals of Britain's
glory, of an opportunity of acting hereafter the
same perfidious parts they have already so often re-
peated.

On the 9th General Amherst informed me of
his intention of sending me to Detroit, and on the
10th in the morning, when I waited upon him a-
gain, I received the following orders.

By his Excellency Jeffrey Amherst, Esq. Major
General and commander in chief of all his Ma-
jesty's forces in North America, &c. &c. &c.
To

To Major Rogers, commanding his Majesty's independent companies of Rangers.

" You will upon receipt hereof, with Capt. Walter's and Capt. Hazen's companies of Rangers under your command, proceed in whale-boats from hence to Fort William-Angus, taking along with you one Joseph Pouppe, alias La Fleur, an inhabitant of Detroit, and Lieut. Brehme, Assistant Engineer.

" From Fort William-Angus you will continue your voyage by the north-shore to Niagara, where you will land your whale-boats, and transport them across the Carrying-place into Lake Erie, applying to Major Waters, or the officer commanding at Niagara, for any assistance you may want on that or any other occasion, requesting of him at the same time to deliver up to you Monsieur Gamelin, who was made prisoner at the reduction of said fort, and has continued there ever since, in order to conduct him, with the above-mentioned Pouppe, to their habitations at Detroit, where, upon taking the oath of allegiance to his most sacred Majesty, whose subjects they are become by the capitulation of the 8th instant; they shall be protected in the peaceable and quiet possession of their properties, and so long as they behave as becoming good and faithful subjects, shall partake of all the other privileges

ing his Majesty's in-
ces of Rangers.

pt hereof, with Capt.
companies of Rangers
need in whale-boats from
shore, taking along with
them La Fleur, an Inha-
bitant. Breckins, Assistant

-Angels you will con-
north-shore to Niagara,
whale-boats, and trans-
ferring place into Lake Erie,
port, or the officer com-
any assistance you may
occasion, requesting of
ever up to you Monsieur
prisoner at the reduction
nued there ever since, in
with the above-mentioned
ers at Detroit, where,
regimes to his most sacred
they are become by the ex-
at; they shall be protected
possession of their proper-
behave as Europeans, and
all partake of all the other
privileges

privileges and immunities granted unto them by the
said capitulation.

" With these, and the detachment, under your
command, you will proceed in your whale-boats a-
cross Lake Erie to Presque Isle, where, upon your
arrival, you will make known the orders I have gi-
ven to the officer commanding that post; and you
will leave said whale-boats and party, taking only
a small detachment of your party, and marching by
land, to join Brigadier General Monkton, where-
ever he may be

" Upon your arrival with him, you will deliver
into his hands the dispatches you shall herewith re-
ceive for him, and follow and obey such orders as
he shall give you for the relief of the garrisons of the
French posts at Detroit, Michilimackinac, or any
others in that district, for gathering in the arms of
the inhabitants thereof, and for administering to
them the oath of allegiance already mentioned;
when you will likewise administer, or see adminis-
tered, the same to the before mentioned Gamelin
and Poupas; and when this is done, and that you
have reconnoitred and explored the country as
much as you can, without losing time unnecessarily
you are to bring away the French troops and arms,
to such a place as you shall be directed by General
Monkton.

" And

And when the whole of this service is compleated, you will march back to your detachment to Presquille, or Niagara, according to the orders you receive from Brigadier Monkton, where you will embark the whole, and in like manner as before, transport your whale-boats across the Carrying-place into Lake Ontario, where you will deliver over your whale-boats into the care of the commanding officer, marching your detachment by land to Albany, or wherever I may be, to receive what further orders I may have to give you.

" Given under my hand at the head quarters in the camp Montreal, 12th Sept. 1760.

Jeff. Amherst."

By his Excellency's command.

Je. Am."

An additional order was given, which was to be shown only to the commanding officers of the different posts I might touch at, the expedition being intended to be kept a profound secret for fear the march should be impeded by the enemy. Indians through whose country I was obliged to march.

This order was as follows, viz.

LoA "

" Major

his service is competent
to your detachment to
ording to the orders you
nkton, where you will
like manner as before,
rofs the Carrying-place
you will deliver over
are of the commanding
chment by land to Al-
e, to receive what fur-
ive you.

the head quarters in the
ept. 1760.

Yess. Amherst.

Y. Amherst.

Y. Amherst.

given, which was to be

iding officers of the dis-

at, the expedition being

ound secret for fear the

by the enemy. Indians

are obliged to march.

On the 15th we got up to an island in the Lake of

St. Francis, and the next night encamped on the

western shore, at the lower end of the upper rift.

We ascended these rifts the day following, and con-

tinued

"Major Walters, or the officer commanding at
Niagara, will judge whether or not there is pro-
vision sufficient at Presque Isle; and Major Rogers
will accordingly take provisions from Niagara.
Eight days provision will take him from Montreal
to Fort William-Augustus; there he will apply to
the commanding officer for a sufficient quantity to
proceed to Niagara. Major Rogers knows where
he is going, and the provisions he will want; some
should be in store likewise at Presque Isle, for the
party Brigadier General Monkton will send.

Yess. Amherst.
Montreal, 12th Sept. 1760.

In pursuance of these orders I embarked at Mon-
treuil the 12th Sept. 1760 (with Captain Brewer,
Captain Walt, Lieutenant Brhema, Assistant En-
gineer, Lieut. Davis of the royal train of artillery,
and two hundred Rangers) about noon, in fifteen
whale-boats; and that night we encamped at la
Chine; next morning we reached Isle de Peirene,
and took review of the two Indian settlements at
Capeyaga and Concedary.

On the 15th we got up to an island in the Lake of
St. Francis, and the next night encamped on the
western shore, at the lower end of the upper rift.
We ascended these rifts the day following, and con-

I continued

tinued all night on the shore, opposite a number of islands.

In the evening of the 19th we came to the Isle de Gallettes, and spent the 20th in repairing our whale-boats, which had received some damage in ascending the rifts.

This morning I sent off ten sick Rangers to Albany, by the way of Oswego, recommending them to the care of Col. Fitch, commanding at Oswego, who was to give them suitable directions.

We left Isle de Gallettes on the 21st; about twelve o'clock, the wind being unfavourable, we passed Oswegachi, and encamped but three miles above it on the northern shore.

On the 22d we continued our course up the river, the wind blowing fresh at south, and halted in the evening at the narrow passage near the islands; but, upon the winds abating at midnight, we embarked and rowed the remainder of that night, and the whole day following, till we came to the place where formerly stood the old Fort of Frontenac, where we found some Indian hunters from Oswegachi. We were detained here all the next day by the tempestuousness of the weather, which was very windy, attended with snow and rain: we how-

opposite a number of

we came to the Isle de
20th in repairing our
ceived some damage in

ten sick Rangers to Al-
to, recommending them
commanding at Oswego,
able directions.

es on the 21st; about
being unfavourable, we
camped but three miles
ore.

ed our course up the ri-
esth at south, and halted
w paces near the islands;
ing at midnight, we em-
minder of that night, and
till we came to the place
old Fort of Frontinac,
than hunters from Oswe-
d here all the next day by
e weather, which was ve-
now and rain: we now
at the end of the river

ever, improved the time in taking a plan of the old
fort, situated at the bottom of a fine safe harbour

There were about five hundred acres of cleared
ground about it which, tho' covered with clover
seemed bad and rocky, and interspersed with some
pine-trees. The Indians here seemed to be well
pleased with the news we brought them of the sur-
render of all Canada, and supplied us with great
plenty of venison and wild fowl.

We left this the 25th, about ten in the morning,
steering a south-course two miles, then west six
miles, which brought us to the mouth of a river
thirty feet wide; then south four miles, where
we halted to refresh the party.

About four in the afternoon we rowed for the moun-
tain bearing south-west, which we did not come up
to till some time in the night, and found it to be
a steep rock, about one hundred feet high. It now
grew foggy, and mistaking our way about six
miles, we rowed all night, and till 8 o'clock next
morning, before we put ashore; which we
then did on a point, where we breakfasted, and
then proceeded on our voyage, rowing till 8 o'clock
at night (being about one hundred miles, as we
imagined, from Frontinac) we landed. This
evening we passed two small islands at the end of
a point

a point extending far into the lake; the darkness and fog prevented us from taking such a survey of them as to be able to give a particular description of them.

The 27th of September, being very windy, we spent the time in deer-hunting, there being great plenty of them there, tho' the land is rocky, the timber bad, chiefly hemlock and pine; and I believe it is generally so on the north-side of Lake Ontario.

We embarked very early on the 28th, steering south-west, leaving a large bay on the right, about twenty miles wide; the western side of which terminates in a point, and a small island; having passed both, about twenty miles on a course west by south we entered the chops of a river, called by the Indians *Grav of Man*; there we encamped, and found about 50 Madisagwa Indians fishing for salmon. At our first appearance they ran down, both men and boys, to the edge of the lake, and continued firing their pieces, to express their joy at the sight of the English column, till such time as we had landed.

They presented us with a deer just killed and split in halves, with the skin on, but the Severin's shot out, which, with them, is a most elegant and pre-
sent.

the lake; the darkness
taking such a survey of
a particular description

er, being very windy,
er-hunting, there being
, tho' the land is rocky,
hemlock and pine; and I
on the north-side of Lake

ly on the 25th, leaving
bay on the right, about
western side of which ter-
small island; having pas-
miles on a course west by
of a river, called by the
there we encamped, and
the Indians fishing for sal-
mon they ran down, both
sides of the lake, and conti-
to express their joy at the
er, till such time as we had

we had no business
a deer just killed and sent in
but the horses were sent
the elegant and pre-
sent,

sent, and significant of the greatest respect. I told
them of the success of their English brethren, a-
gainst their fathers the French; at which they ei-
ther were, or pretended to be, very well pleased.

Some of us fished with them in the evening be-
ing invited by them, and filled a bark-canoes with
salmon in about half an hour. Their method of
catching the fish is very extraordinary. One person
holds a lighted pine-torch, while a second strikes the
fish with a spear. This is the season in which the
salmon spawn on these parts, contrary to what they
do in any other place I ever knew them before.

I found the soil near this river very good and le-
vel. The timber is chiefly oak and maple, or the
ugar-tree.

At seven o'clock the next morning we took our
departure from this river, the wind being a head.
About fifteen miles further, on a west south-west
course, we put into another river, called the Life of
Man. The Messaguas, who were hunting here,
about thirty in number, paid us the same compli-
ments with those we just before received from their
countrymen, and instead of a deer, sent up a young
bear and presented me with it. Plenty of fish was
caught here also. The land continued good and
level; the soil of blackish colour, and the banks of
the lake were low. I 3

The wind being fair the 30th, we embarked at the first dawn of day, and with the assistance of sails and oars, made great way on a south-west course, and in the evening reached the river Toronto, having run seventy miles. Many points extending far into the lake, occasioned a frequent alteration of our course. We passed a bank of twenty miles in length, but the land behind it seemed to be level, well-timbered with large oaks, hickories, maples, and some poplars. No mountain appeared in sight. There was a track of about 300 acres of cleared ground, round the place where formerly the French had a fort, that was called Fort Toronto. The soil here is principally clay. The deer are extremely plenty in this country. Some Indians were hunting at the mouth of the river, who run into the woods at our approach, very much frightened. They came in, however, in the morning and testified their joy at the news of our success against the French. They told us "that we could easily accomplish our journey from thence to Detroit in eight days: that when the French traded at that place, the Indians used to come with their peltry from Michlimakana, down the river Toronto: that this portage was but twenty miles from that to a river falling into Lake Huron, which had some falls, but none very considerable: they added, that there was a carrying-place of fifteen miles from some westerly part of Lake Erie, to a river running without any falls thro' several Indian towns into Lake St. Clair.

30th, we embarked at
with the assistance of sails
on a south-west course,
the river Toronto, ha-
ny points extending far
a frequent alteration of
bank of twenty miles in
d it seemed to be level,
oaks, hickories, maples,
mountain appeared in sight.
at 300 acres of cleared
were formerly the French
and Fort Toronto. The
The deer are extremely
me Indians were hunting
who run into the woods
a frightened. They came
g and testified their joy at
against the French. They
ly accomplish our journey
eight days: that when the
place, the Indians used to
from Michlimakana, down
the portage was but twen-
ty falling into Lake Hu-
e, but none very consider-
there was a carrying-place
the westerly part of Lake
without any falls thro' it
Lake St. Clair.

I think Toronto a most convenient place for a
factory, and that from thence we may very easily
settle the north-side of Lake Erie.

We left Toronto the 1st of October, steering
south, right across the west-end of Lake Ontario.
At dark we arrived at the south-shore, five miles
west of Fort Niagara, some of our boats being now
become exceedingly leaky and dangerous.

This morning, before we set out, I directed the
following order of march:

"The boats in a line. If the wind rose high,
the red flag hoisted, and the boats to crowd nearer,
that they might be ready to give mutual assistance
in case of a leak or other accident," by which
means we saved the crew and arms of the boat
commanded by Lieutenant McCormack, which
sprung a leak and sunk, losing nothing except their
packs.

We halted all the next day at Niagara, and pro-
vided ourselves with blankets, shirts, shoes,
magazine, &c.

I received from the commanding officer eighty
barrels of provisions, and changed two whale-boats
for as many battoes, which proved leaky.

In the evening some of my party proceeded with the provisions to the falls, and in the morning marched the rest there, and began the portage of the provisions and boats. Mess. Brheme and Davis took a survey of the great cascade of Niagara.

As the winter-flats were now advancing very fast in this country, and I had orders to join Brig. Monkton from Presque Isle, wherever he might be, to receive his directions, I set out this evening, the 5th of October, in a bark-cutter, with Lieutenants Brheme and Holmes, and eight Rangers, leaving the command of my party to Capt. Brewer, with instructions to follow to Presque Isle, and encamped eight miles up the stream issuing out of Lake Erie. The land appeared to be good on both sides the river.

Next morning embarked early, and floated a south-west course. About noon opened Lake Erie, and leaving a boy to the left, we arrived by sunset at the southern shore of the lake; we then floated west till about a clock at night, and drew up our boats on a sandy beach, forty miles distant from where we embarked in the morning.

The wind was very fresh next day, which prevented our setting out till 11 o'clock; so that we made no further progress than about twenty-eight miles.

my party proceeded with
 e, and in the morning
 d began the portage of
 Mess. Brheme and Davis
 eastward of Niagara.

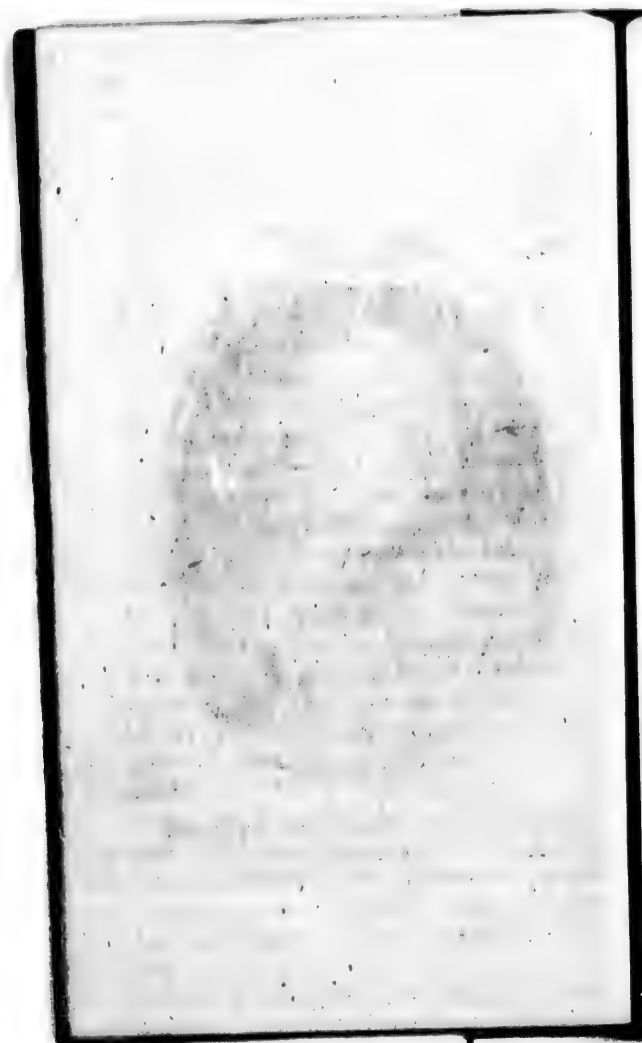
we now advancing very
 had orders to join Brig.
 Se, wherever he might
 me, I set out this even-
 in a bark-cutter, with
 Holmes, and eight Ran-
 d of my party to Capt.
 to follow to Presque
 miles up the stream issuing
 and appeared to be good

very early, and soon a
 need opened Lake Erie,
 left, we arrived by sun-
 of the lake, we then
 took at night, and drew
 beach, forty miles distant
 in the morning.

the next day, which pre-
 1.22 o'clock; so that we
 than about twenty-eight
 miles



BRIGADIER GEN. MACKINTOSH.



miles on a west-south-west course. A little after noon, on the 8th of October, we arrived at Presque Isle, having kept a southerly course all the morning; I tarried there till 3 o'clock, when, having sent back my party to assist Captain Brewer, Mr. Beheme, Lieutenant Holmes, and myself, took leave of Colonel Bouquet, who commanded at Presque Isle, and with three other men, in a bark-canoe, proceeded to French Creek, and at night encamped on the road, half-way to Fort du Bouf. We got to this fort about 10 o'clock next day, and after three hours rest launched our canoe into the river, and paddled down about ten miles below the fort.

On the 10th we encamped at the second crossings of the river, the land on both sides appeared to be good all the way. The 11th we reached the Mingo Cabbins, and the night of the 12th we lodged at Venango; from thence went down the River Ohio, and on the morning of the 17th I waited upon Brigadier Monkton at Pittsburgh, and delivered him General Amherst's dispatches, and my own instructions.

I left Pittsburgh the 20th, at the request of General Monkton, who promised to send his orders after me to Presque Isle, by Mr. Croghan, and to forward Capt. Campbell immediately with a com-

pany of the Royal Americans; I got back to Presque Isle the 30th of October, Captain Campbell arrived the day after; Captain Brewer was got there before us, with the Rangers from Niagara, having lost some of the boats, and part of the provisions.

We immediately began to repair the damaged boats; and, as there was an account that a vessel, expected with provisions from Niagara, was lost, I dispatched Capt. Brewer by land to Detroit, with a drove of forty oxen, supplied by Col. Bouquet. Capt. Wait was about the same time sent back to Niagara for more provisions, and ordered to cruise along the north-coast of Lake Erie, and halt about twenty miles to the east of the strait between the Lakes Huron and Erie, till further orders. Brewer had a batteau to ferry his party over the Creeks, two horses, and Capt. Monter with twenty Indians, composed of the Six Nations, Delawares and Shawanese, to protect him from the insults of the enemy Indians.

My order of march over from Presque Isle was as follows:

" The boats to row two deep; first, Major Rogers's boat, abreast of him Captain Croghan; Captain Campbell follows with his company, the Rangers.

ns, I got back to Pres-
ber, Captain Campbell
Captain Brewer was got
Rangers from Niagara,
boats, and part of the

to repair the damaged
an account that a vessel,
from Niagara, was lost,
by land to Detroit, with
supplied by Col. Bouquet.
the same time sent back to
ons, and ordered to cruise
Lake Erie, and halt about
of the freight between
Erie, till further orders.
ferry his party over the
Capt. Monro with twenty
e Six Nations, Delawares
& him from the insults of

ver from Presque Isle was

two deep; first, Major
of him Captain Croghan;
we with his company, the
Rangers

Rangers next; and lastly, Lieutenant Holmes,
who commands the rear-guard, with his own boat,
and that of Ensign Wait's, so as to be ready to
assist any boat that may be in distress. Boats in
distress are to fire a gun, when Mr. Holmes with
the other boats under his command are immediate-
ly to go to their relief, take them to the shore, or
give such other assistance as he thinks may be best.
When the wind blows hard, so that the boats can-
not keep their order, a red flag will be hoisted in
the Major's boat; then the boats are not to mind
their order, but put after the flag as fast as possible
to the place of landing, to which the flag-boat
will always be a guide.

"It is recommended to the soldiers as well as
officers, not to mind the waves of the lake; but
when the surf is high to stick to their oars, and
the men at helm to keep the boat quartering on
the waves, and briskly follow; then no mischief
will happen by any storm whatever. Ten of the
best steersmen amongst the Rangers are to attend
Captain Campbell and company in his boats. It
is likewise recommended to the officers command-
ing in those boats, to hearken to the steersmen in
a storm or bad weather, in managing their boats.
At evening, (if it is thought necessary to row in
the night time) a blue flag will be hoisted in the
Major's boat, which is the signal for the boats to
dress.

draws, and then proceed in the following manner: the boats next the hindermost, are to wait for the two in the rear; the two third boats for the second two; and so on, to the boats leading a-head, to prevent separation, which in the night would be hazardous.

" Mr. Bhrum is not to mind the order of march, but to steer as is most convenient for him. To make his observations, he is however desired never to go more than a league a-head of the detachment, and is to join them at landing or encamping.

" On landing, the Regulars are to encamp in the center, and Lieutenant Holmes's division on the right wing with Mr. Croghan's people, Lieut. McCormick on the left wing with his division; Mr. Jequie to be always ready with his Mohogan Indians, which are the picket of the detachment, part of which are always to encamp in the front of the party; Capt. Campbell will mount a guard consisting of one Subaltern, one Sergeant, and thirty privates, immediately on landing, for the security of his own encampment and baggage; Lieutenant Holmes's division to keep a guard of one Sergeant and ten Rangers on the right, and Lieutenant McCormick the like number on the left, and likewise to act as Adjutant to the detachment.

the following manner:
are to wait for the
boats for the second
leading a-head, to
the night would be

mind the order of
t convenient for him.
e is, however, desired
regue a-head of the
camp at landing or en-

are to encamp in
Holmes's division on
Creggan's people, Lieut.
ing with his division;
ady with his Mohogan
et of the detachment,
encamp in the front of
h will mount a guard
one Serjeant, and
y on landing, for the
mpment and batteries;
n to keep a guard of
yers on the right, and
e, like number of the
Adjutant to the detach-
ment.

ment, and the orderly drum to attend him, to be
at the Serjeant's call. The general to beat when
ordered by the Major, at which time the whole
party is to prepare for embarking, the troops half
an hour after, when all the guards are to be called
in, and the party embark immediately after.

"There is to be no firing of guns in this detach-
ment without permission from the commanding
officer, except when in distress on the lake. No
man to go without the centries, when in camp, un-
less he has orders so to do; great care to be taken
of the arms, and the officers to review them daily.
Captain Campbell will order a drum to beat, for
the regulation of his company when landed, at
any time he thinks proper for parading his men,
or reviewing their arms, &c.

"It is not doubted but due attention will be
paid to all orders given.

"Mr. Creggan will, at landing, always attend
the Major for orders, and to give such intelligence
as he may have had from the Indians, throughout
the day."

"We left Presque Isle the 4th of November, kept
a western course, and by night had advanced
twenty miles.

The

The badness of the weather obliged us to lie by all the next day; and as the wind continued very high, we did not advance more than ten or twelve miles the 6th, on a course west-south-west.

We set out very early on the 7th, and came to the mouth of Chogage River; here we met with a party of Attawawa Indians, just arrived from Detroit. We informed them of our success in the total reduction of Canada, and that we were going to bring off the French garrison at Detroit, who were included in the capitulation. I held out a belt, and told them I would take my brothers by the hand, and carry them to Detroit, to see the truth of what I had said. They retired, and held a council, and promised an answer next morning. That evening we smoked the calumet, or pipe of peace, all the Indians smoking by turns out of the same pipe. The peace thus concluded, we went to rest, but kept good guards, a little distrust- ing their sincerity.

The Indians gave their answer early in the morning, and said their young warriors should go with me, while the old ones staid to hunt for their wives and children.

I gave them ammunition at their request, and a string of wampum in testimony of my approbation.

obliged us to lie by
wind continued very
e than ten or twelve
south-west.

the 7th, and came to
; here we met with
s, just arrived from
of our success in the
d that we were going
son at Detroit, who
ation. I held out a
take my brothers by
Detroit, to see the
they retired, and held
answer next morning.
the calamet, or pipe
aking by turns out of
thus concluded, we
guards, a little distrust-

wer early in the morn-
arriors should go with
to hunt for their wives

at their request, and a
ny of my approbation,
and

and charged them to send some of their sachems,
or chiefs, with the party who drove the oxen along
shore; and they promised to spread the news, and
prevent any annoyance from their hunters.

We were detained here by unfavourable wea-
ther till the 12th, during which time the Indians
held a plentiful market in our camp of venison
and turkies.

From this place we steered one mile west, then
a mile south, then four miles west, then south-
west ten miles, then five miles west-and-by-south,
then south-west eight miles, then west-and-by-south
seven miles, then four miles west, and then south-
west six miles, which brought us to Elk River, as
the Indians call it, where we halted two days on
account of bad weather and contrary winds.

On the 15th we embarked, and kept the follow-
ing courses; west-south-west two miles, west-north-
west three miles, west-by-north one mile, west two
miles; here we passed the mouth of a river, and
then steered west one mile, west-by-south two
miles, west-by-north four miles, north-west three
miles, west-north-west two miles, west-by-north
ten miles, where we encamped at the mouth of a
river twenty-five yards wide.

The

The weather did not permit us to depart till the 18th, when our course was west-by-south six miles, west-by-north four miles, west two miles; here we found a river about fifteen yards over, then proceeded west half a mile, west-south-west six miles and a half, west two miles and an half, north-west two miles, where we encamped; and discovered a river sixteen yards broad at the entrance.

We left this place the next day, steering north-west four miles, north-north-west six miles, which brought us to Sandusky Lake; we continued the same course two miles, then north-north-east half a mile, north-west a quarter of a mile, north the same distance, north-west half a mile, north-by-east one furlong, north-west-by-north one quarter of a mile, north-west-by-west one mile, west-north-west one mile, then west half a mile, where we encamped near a small river, on the east-side.

From this place I detached Mr. Bthorne with a letter to Monsieur Belter, the French commandant at Detroit, in these words:

To Capt. Belter, or the Officer commanding at Detroit.

" Sir,

" That you may not be alarmed at the approach of the English troops under my command, when they come to Detroit, I send forward this by
Lieut.

air us to depart till the
est-by-south six miles,
two miles; here we
wards over, then pro-
south-west six miles
and an half, north-west
ped; and discovered a
the entrance.

at-day, steering north-
west six miles, which
we continued the
north-north-east half
of a mile, north the
half a mile, north-by-
north one quarter
one mile, west-north-
half a mile, where we
on the east-side.

ed Mr. Brehme with a
the French commandant

Officer commanding at
it.

skinned at the approach
my command, when
send forward this by
Lieut.

(199)

Lieut. Brehme, to acquaint you, that I have Gen.
Amherst's orders to take possession of Detroit, and
such other posts as are in that district, which, by
capitulation, agreed to and signed by the Marquis
de Vaudreuil, and his Excellency Major General
Amherst, the 8th of September last, now belong
to the King of Great Britain.

"I have with me the Marquis de Vaudreuil's
letters to you directed, for your guidance on this
occasion, which letters I shall deliver you when I
arrive at or near your post, and shall occupy the
troops I have with me at some distance from the
fort, till you have reasonable time to be made ac-
quainted with the Marquis de Vaudreuil's instrum-
ent, and the capitulation, a copy of which I have
with me likewise. I am,

Sir,

Your humble servant,

Robert Rogers."

The land on the south-side of Lake Erie, from
Presque Isle, puts on a very fine appearance; the
country level, the timber tall, and of the best sort,
such as oak, hickorie and locust; and for game,
both

(200)

both for plenty and variety, perhaps exceeded by no part of the world.

I followed Mr. Brême on the 20th, and took a course north-west four miles and an half, south-west two, and west three, to the mouth of a river in breadth 300 feet.

Here we found several Huron sachems, who told me, "that a body of 400 Indian warriors was collected at the entrance into the great straight, in order to obstruct our passage; and that Monsieur Beletor had excited them to defend their country; that they were messengers to know my business, and whether the person I had sent forward had reported the truth that Canada was reduced." I confirmed this account, and that the fort at Detroit was given up by the French Governor. I presented them a large belt, and spoke to this effect:

" Brothers,

" With this belt I take you by the hand. You are to go directly to your brothers assembled at the mouth of the river, and tell them to go to their towns till I arrive at the fort. I shall call you there as soon as Monsieur Beletor is sent away, which shall be in two days after my arrival. We will

will then settle all matters. You live happily in your own country. Your brothers have long desired to bring this about. Tell your warriors to mind their fathers (the French) no more, for they are all prisoners to your brothers (the English), who pitied them, and left them their houses and goods, on their swearing by the Great One who made the world, to become as Englishmen for ever. They are now your brothers; if you abuse them, you affront me, unless they behave ill. Tell this to your brothers the Indians. What I say is truth. When we meet at Detroit I will convince you it is all true."

These sachems set out in good temper the next morning, being the 21st; but as the wind was very high, we did not move from this place.

On the 22d we encamped on a beach, after having steered that day north-west six miles, north-north-west four, to a river of the breadth of twenty yards, then north-west-by-west two miles, west-north-west one, west four, and west north-west five; it was with great difficulty we could procure any fuel here, the west-side of the Lake Erie abounding with swamps.

We rowed ten miles the next day, on a course north-west and by west, to Point Cedar, and then formed

formed a camp; here we met some of the Indian messengers, to whom we had spoken two days before: they told us, their warriors were gone up to Monsieur Beletor, who, they said, is a strong man, and intends to fight you; a sachem of Attawawas was amongst them. All their Indians set out with us. The 24th we went north-west and by north ten miles, and fourteen miles north-east, to a long point; this night sixty of the Indian party came to our camp, who congratulated us on our arrival in their country, and offered themselves as an escort to Detroit, from whence they came the day before. They informed me, that Mr. Bhreme, and his party were confined; and that Monsieur Beletor had set up an high flag-staff, with a wooden effigy of a man's head on the top, and upon that a crow; that the crow was to represent himself, the man's head mine, and the meaning of the whole, that he would scratch out my brains. This artifice, however, had no effect; for the Indians told him (as they said) that the reverse would be the true explanation of the sign.

After we had proceeded six miles north-east, we halted at the request of the Indians, who desired me to call in the chief-Captains of the party at the Straight's mouth. I did so, and spent the 26th at the same place, in conciliating their savage minds to peace and friendship.

The

The morning of the 27th, Monsieur Belater sent me the following letter by Monsieur Babec.

" MONSIEUR,

" J'ai reçu la lettre que vous m'avez écrite par un de vos Officiers; comme je n'ai point d'interprète, je ne puis faire la réponse simplement.

L'Officier qui m'a remis la votre, me fait savoir qu'il étoit détaché afin de m'annoncer votre arrivée, pour prendre possession de cette garnison, selon la capitulation faite au Canada, que vous avez conjointement avec un lettre de Monsieur de Vaudreuil à mon adresse. Je vous prie, Monsieur, d'arrêter vos troupes à l'entrance de la rivière, jusqu'à ce que vous m'envoyez la capitulation & la lettre de Monseigneur le Marquis de Vaudreuil, afin de pouvoir y conformer.

Je suis bien surpris qu'on ne m'a pas envoyé un Officier François avec vous, selon la coutume.

J'ai l'honneur d'être, &c. &c.

De Belater."

A Monsieur Monsieur Rogers, Major, & commandant le détachement Anglois."

In

In English thus.

" Sir,

I received the letter you wrote me by one of your Officers; but as I have no interpreter, cannot fully answer it.

The Officer that delivered me yours, gives me to understand, that he was sent to give me notice of your arrival to take possession of this garrison, according to the capitulation made in Canada; that you have likewise a letter from M^{on}sieur Vaudreuil, directed to me. I beg, Sir, you'll halt your troops at the entrance of the river, till you send me the capitulation and the Marquis de Vaudreuil's letter, that I may act in conformity thereto.

I am surpris'd there is no French Officer sent to me along with you, as is the custom on such occasions. I have the honour to be &c. &c.

Dr. Baker.

To Mr. Rogers, Major and Commander of the English detachment."

Shortly after a French party, under Captain Berriger, beat a parley at the West shore; I sent

Mr.

Mr. M^cCormick to know his business, who returned with the Officer and the following letter :

Detroit, le 25me Novembre, 1760.

MONSIEUR,

" Je vous ai déjà marqué par Monsieur Burrager les raisons pourquoi je ne puis répondre en détail à la lettre qui m'a été remise le 22me de courant, par l'Officier que vous m'avez détaché.

" J'ignore les raisons pourquoi il n'a pas voulu retourner auprès de vous. J'ai envoyé mon interprète Huron chez cette nation, que l'on me dit être allée sur le chemin de les contenir, ne sachant positivement si c'est à vous ou à nous qu'ils en veulent, & pour leur dire de ma part, qu'ils aient à se tenir tranquillement ; que je savais ce que je devois à mon Général, & que de lorsque l'acte de la capitulation seroit réglé, j'étois obligé d'obéir. Le dit interprète m'ordre de vous attendre, & de vous remettre la présente. Ne soyez point surpris, Monsieur, si sur le long de la côte vous trouverez nos habitans sur leur garde ; on leur a annoncé qu'il y avoit beaucoup de nations à votre suite, & qui en avoient promis le pillage, & que les dites nations de leur même déterminées à vous le demander ; si leur on permet de regarder, c'est pour votre conservation & sûreté ainsi que pour la nôtre, en cas que les dites nations devenoient

devenaient à faire les infidèles, vous seul de l'avis
peut-être par des circonstances présentes en
état de les requirer. Je ne salue, Monsieur, que si
tôt que la présente vous sera parvenue, vous voudriez
bien m'envoyer par quel qu'un de vos Messieurs, de
la capitulation la lettre de Monsieur Vandreuil.
J'ai l'honneur d'être,

Monsieur,

Votre très-humble & obéissant serviteur,

Signe de Brette.

A Monsieur Monsieur Rigot,
Major, commandant le de-
tachement Anglois au bas de
la rivière.

La Haye le 28 Nov.

Detach. 28th Nov. 1760.

"I have already by Mr. Burrage acquainted
you with the reason why I could not answer parti-
cularly the letter which was delivered me the 24th
instant by the Officer, but now I am
enabled to do so."

vous seul ne seriez
lancé présent en
te, Monsieur, que si
venez, vous voudriez
de vos Messieurs, le
Monsieur Vaudreuil.

obéissant serviteur,

Signe de Brétave.

25th Nov. 1760.

Barrege de la Rivière
de la Saguenay
delivered me the ad
not to me.

[207]

"I am entirely unacquainted with the reasons
of his not returning to you. I sent my Huron in-
terpreter to that nation, and told him to stop them,
should they be on the road, not knowing positively
whether they were inclined to favour you or us,
and to tell them from me they should behave
peaceably; that I knew what I owed to my Gene-
ral, and that when the capitulation should be set-
tled I was obliged to obey. The said interpreter
has orders to wait on you, and deliver you this.

"Be not surpris'd, Sir, if along the coast you
find the inhabitants upon their guard: it was told
them you had several Indian nations with you, to
whom you had promised permission to plunder, nay,
that they were even resolv'd to force you to it. I
have therefore allowed the said inhabitants to take
to their arms, so it is for your safety and preser-
vation as well as ours: for should these Indians be-
come insolent, you may not perhaps, in your pre-
sent situation, be able to subdue them again.

"I assure myself, Sir, that, as soon as that shall
come to hand, you will send me by some of the
Gentlemen you have with you, both the capitula-
tion and the reasons for it, which I am oblig'd to
obtain."

tion and Monsieur Vaudreuil's letter. I have the
honour to be,

Sir,
Your very humble and con-
fident servant,

To Major Rogers.

We encamped the next day five miles up the
river, having rowed against the wind, and on the
19th I dispatched Captain Campbell, with Messieurs
Burrage and Dubois, and their parties, with a
letter.

I acknowledge the receipt of your two letters,
both of which were delivered to me yesterday.

Mr. Bruneau has not yet returned. The inclosed
letter from the Marquis de Vaudreuil will inform
you of the surrender of all Canada to the King of
Great Britain, and of the great indulgence grant-
ed to the inhabitants; as also of the terms granted
to the troops of his Most Christian Majesty. Cap-
tain Campbell, whom I have sent forward with
this letter, will shew you the capitulation. I think
you will not detain him, as I am determined, a-
greeable

[illegible][illegible]

taken down, at which about 700 Indians gave a shout, merrily exulting in their prediction being verified, that the crow represented the English.

They then turned to the numerous inhabitants of the neighbourhood, expressed their satisfaction at their generosity in not putting them to death, and said they would atone for the future right for a nation thus favoured by him who made the world.

They then returned to the fort, and by noon of the 1st of December we had collected the militia, dismissed them, and to them also administered the oaths of allegiance.

The interval from this time to the present is spent in preparing to execute some measures that appeared to be necessary to the service we were engaged in. I put Monsieur Beltrac and the other prisoners under the command of Lieut. Walker and Major Rogers, as he carried to Philadelphia; and ordered Capt. Gantebell and his company to keep possession of the fort. Lieut. Butler and Major Walker, together with a detached party of twenty men, consisting of French troops from the forts Minto and Ontario, I ordered that, if possible, a party should follow at the fort and take possession of the city of Quebec.

[illegible]

about a journey to Michilimackinac across by land; but they declared it impracticable at this season without snow-shoes, and to our great mortification we were obliged to return to Detroit; the ice obstructing us so much, that, with the greatest diligence and fatigue, we did not arrive there till the 21st.

I delivered the ammunition to Capt. Campbell, and on the 23d set out for Pittsburg, marching along the west end of Lake Erie, till the second of January 1761, when we arrived at Lake Sandusky.

I have a very good picture of the fall from Detroit to this place, rich and varied principally with white and black oaks, hickories, boxings and maples. We found wild apples along the west end of Lake Erie, some rich specimens of several sorts, among them a tree, burdock and some others, and near the foot of the hill, which, extending down to the water, is the residence of the Huron. The longest of Sandusky is about 18 miles from our camp, and about six miles across it. We came to a town of the Winnet Indians, where we halted to rest.

On January 3d, I set out for Sandusky, passing by south one mile and a half, Sandusky, and through a small town, crossed a small creek, and in yards

yards wide, running east, travelled south-east-by-east one mile, passed three Indian houses, south-east three quarters of a mile, and came to a small Indian town of ten houses. There is a remarkable fine spring at this place, rising out of the side of a small hill with such force, that it boils above the ground in a column three feet high. I imagine it discharges ten hogheads of water in a minute. From this town our course was south-south-east three miles, south two miles, crossed a brook about five yards wide, running east south-east travelled south one mile, crossed a brook about four yards wide, running east-south-east, travelled south-south-east two miles, crossed a brook about eight yards wide. This day we killed plenty of deer and turkeys on our march, and encamped.

On the 4th we travelled south-south-east one mile, and came to a river about twenty-five yards wide, crossed the river, where were two Indian houses, from thence south-by-east one mile, south-south-east one mile and a half, south-east two miles, south-south-east one mile, and came to an Indian house, where there was a family of Winjots hunting. From thence south-by-east a quarter of a mile, south five miles, came to the river we crossed this morning, the course of the river here is west-north-west. This day killed several deer and other game, and encamped.

On

On the 5th, travelled south-south-west half a mile, south one mile, south-south-west three quarters of a mile, south half a mile, crossed two small brooks running east, went a south-south-west course half a mile, south half a mile, south-east half a mile, south two miles, south-east one mile, south half a mile, crossed a brook running east by north, travelled south by east half a mile, south-south-east two miles, south-east three quarters of a mile, south-south-east one mile, and came to Maskongom Creek, about eight yards wide, crossed the creek, and encamped, about 21 1/2 miles from it. This day killed deer and rabbit in our march.

On the 6th we travelled about fourteen or fifteen miles, our general course being about east-south-east, killed plenty of game, and encamped by a very fine spring.

The 7th our general course about south-south-east, travelled about six miles, and crossed Maskongom Creek, running south, about twenty yards wide. There is an Indian town about twenty yards from the creek, on the east side, which is called the Mingo Cabbins. There were but two or three Indians in the place, the rest were hunting. These Indians have plenty of corn, horses, dogs, &c.

The 8th, having at this town to mend our moccasins, and kill deer, the provisions I brought from Detroit being entirely expended. I went a-hunting with ten of the Rangers, and by ten o'clock got into a station that we had occasion for.

On the 9th travelled about twelve miles, our general course being about south-east, and encamped by the side of a long meadow, where there were a number of Indians hunting.

The 10th, about the same course, we travelled eleven miles, and encamped, having killed in our march this day three bears and two elk.

The 11th, continuing near the same course, we travelled thirteen miles and encamped, where were a number of Winnetoes and Six Nation Indians hunting.

The 12th, travelled six miles, bearing rather more to the east, and encamped. This evening we killed several beavers.

The 13th, travelled about north-east six miles, and came to the Delaware's town, called Beaver Town. This Indian town stands on good land,

on

on the west-side of the Maskongom River; and opposite to the town, on the east-side, is a fine river, which discharges itself into it. The latter is about thirty yards wide, and the Maskongom about forty; so that when they both join, they make a very fine stream, with a swift current, running to the south-west. There are about 3000 acres of cleared ground round this place. The number of warriors in this town is about 150. All the way from the Lake Sandusky I found level land, and a good country. No pine-trees of any sort; the timber is white, black, and yellow oak, black and white walnut, cyprus, chestnut, and locust trees. At this town I staid till the 16th in the morning to refresh my party, and procured some corn of the Indians to boil with our venison.

On the 16th we marched nearly an east course about nine miles, and encamped by the side of a small river.

On the 17th kept much the same course, crossing several rivulets and creeks. We travelled about twenty miles, and encamped by the side of a small river.

On the 19th we travelled about sixteen miles on easterly course, and encamped by a brook.

The 19th, about the same general course, we crossed two considerable streams of water, and some large hills timbered with chefnut and oak, and having travelled about twenty miles, we encamped by the side of a small river, at which place were a number of Delawares hunting.

On the 20th, keeping still an easterly course, and having much the same travelling as the day before, we advanced on our journey about nineteen miles, which brought us to Beaver Creek, where are two or three Indian houses on the west side of the creek, and in sight of the Ohio.

Bad weather prevented our journeying on the 21st, but the next day we prosecuted our march. Having crossed the creek, we travelled twenty miles, nearly south-east, and encamped with a party of Indian hunters.

On the 23d we came again to the Ohio, opposite to Fort Pitt, from whence I ordered Lieutenant

M'Cormack

McCormack to march the party across the country to Albany, and, after tarrying there till the 26th, I came the common road to Philadelphia, from whence to New York, where, after this long, fatiguing tour, I arrived February 14, 1761.

On the 1st of March 1761, I left New York, and went to Albany, where I arrived on the 10th of the same month. I then went to the College of William and Mary, and spent some time in the study of the laws, and in the company of the gentlemen of the bar.

PAID ON 10th 1761

On the 10th of March 1761, I left Albany, and went to the College of William and Mary, and spent some time in the study of the laws, and in the company of the gentlemen of the bar.

On the 10th of March 1761, I left Albany, and went to the College of William and Mary, and spent some time in the study of the laws, and in the company of the gentlemen of the bar.

McCormack

by across the country
there till the 26th.
Philadelphia, from
after this long, so-
ry 14. 1793.



in
th
P
V
la
M
M
A
N
di
P
Pr

AN
Historical ACCOUNT
OF THE
EXPEDITION

AGAINST THE
OHIO INDIANS,
IN THE YEAR MDCCLXIV. 1764

UNDER THE COMMAND OF
HENRY BOUQUET, Esq.

Colonel of foot, and now Brigadier General
in America. Including his Transactions with
the Indians, Relative to the Delivery of the
Prisoners, and the Preliminaries of Peace.
With an Introductory Account of the Preced-
ing Campaign, and Battle at Bushy Run.

To which are annexed

MILITARY PAPERS,

CONTAINING

Reflections on the War with the Savages; a
Method of forming Frontier Settlements; some
Account of the Indian Country; with a List of
Nations, Fighting Men, Towns, Distances, and
different Routes.

Published, from authentic Documents, by
a Lover of his Country. *Smith, William*

DUBLIN.

Printed for JOHN MILLIKEN, at (No 10.)
in Skinner-Row, MDCCLXIX.

EXPERIMENT

... И С Т Е И Г Р А Д А

ATTACHMENT

THE UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF STAFF
WASHINGTON, D. C. 20315

LIBRARY BOUGHT BY

[illegible]

LIBRARY

Account of the late General Pitt Rivers, by
John Pitt Rivers, Esq. F.R.S. &c.
London: Printed by J. G. & J. S. Smith, 1871.

1. Power of the County Government

DUBLIN

1990

INTRODUCTION.

THE general peace, concluded between Great-Britain, France and Spain, in the year 1762, although viewed in different lights by persons variously affected in the mother country, was nevertheless universally considered as a most happy event in America.

To behold the French, who had so long afflicted and supported the Indians, in the most destructive wars and cruel depredations on our frontier settlements at last compelled to cede all Canada, and restricted to the western side of Mississippi, was what we had long wished, but scarcely hoped an accomplishment of in our own days. The precision with which our boundaries were expressed, admitted of no ground for future disputes, and was matter of exultation to every one who understood and regarded the interest of these colonies. We had now the pleasing prospect of "entire security from all molestation of the Indians, since French intrigues could no longer be employed to seduce, or French force to support them."

The several quotations in this introduction are taken from the Annual Register, 1762, which is written with great elegance and truth, so far as the author appears to have been furnished with materials.

INTRODUCTION.

“ UNHAPPILY, however, we were disappointed in this expectation. Our danger arose from that very quarter, in which we imagined ourselves in the most perfect security; and just at the time when we concluded the Indians to be entirely awed, and almost sub-
 “ jected by our power, they suddenly fell upon the frontiers of our most valuable settlements, and upon all our out-lying forts, with such unanimity in the design, and with such savage
 “ fury in the attack, as we had not experienced, even in the hottest times of any former
 “ war.”

SEVERAL reasons have been assigned for this perfidious conduct on their part; such as an omission of the usual presents, and some settlements made on lands not yet purchased from them. But these causes, if true, could only affect a few tribes, and never could have formed so general a combination against us. The true reason seems to have been a jealousy of our growing power, heightened by their seeing the French almost wholly driven out of America, and a number of forts now possessed by us, which commanded the great lakes and rivers communicating with them, and awed the whole Indian country. They probably imagined that they beheld “ in
 “ every little garrison the germ of a future colony,” and thought it incumbent on them to make one general and timely effort to crush our power in the birth.

By the papers in the Appendix, a general idea may be formed of the strength of the different Indian nations surrounding our settlements, and their situation with respect to each other.

THE Shawanese, Delawares and other Ohio tribes, took the lead in this war, and seem to have

ON.

we were disap-
Our danger a-
which we ima-
perfect security;
concluded the
and almost sub-
ddenly fell upon
ble settlements,
with such una-
with such savage
d not experienc-
of any former

assigned for this
art; such as an
and some settle-
hated from them.
only affect a few
med so general a
true reason seems
growing power,
e French almost
and a number of
hich commanded
mmunicating with
Indian country.
they beheld "in
n of a future co-
mbent on them to
effort to crush our
pendix, a general
ngth of the dispo-
g our settlements,
to each other.
s and other Ohio
war, and seem to
have

INTRODUCTION. v

have begun it rather too precipitately, before the other tribes in conederacy with them, were ready for action.

THEIR scheme appears to have been projected with much deliberate mischief in the intention, and more than usual skill in the system of execution. They were to make one general and sudden attack upon our frontier settlements in the time of harvest, to destroy our men, corn, cattle, &c. as far as they could penetrate, and to starve our posts, by cutting off their supplies, and all communication with the inhabitants of the Provinces.

In pursuance of this bold and bloody project, they fell suddenly upon our traders whom they had invited into their country, murdered many of them, and made one general plunder of their effects, to an immense value.

THE frontiers of Pennsylvania, Maryland and Virginia, were immediately over-run with scalping parties, marking their way with blood and devastation wherever they came, and all those examples of savage cruelty, which never fail to accompany an Indian war.

ALL our out-forts, even at the remotest distances, were attacked about the same time; and the following ones soon fell into the enemies hands—viz. Le Boeuf, Venango, Presqu' Isle, on and near lake Erie; La Bay upon lake Michigan; St. Joseph's, upon the river of that name; Miami upon the Miami river; Ouachatanon upon the Ouabache; Sandusky upon lake Junundat; and Michilimackinac.

BEING but weakly garrisoned, trusting to the security of a general peace so lately established, unable to obtain the least intelligence from the colonies, or from each other, and being sepa-

rately persuaded by their treacherous and savage assailants that they had carried every other place before them, it could not be expected that these small posts could hold out long; and the fate of their garrisons is terrible to relate.

THE news of their surrender, and the continued ravages of the enemy, struck all America with consternation, and depopulated a great part of our frontiers. We now saw most of those posts, suddenly wrested from us, which had been the great object of the late war, and one of the principal advantages acquired by the peace. Only the forts of Niagara, the Detroit and Fort-Pier, remained in our hands, of all that had been purchased with so much blood and treasure. But these were places of consequence, and we hope it will ever remain an argument of their importance, and of the attention that should be paid to their future support, that they alone continued to awe the whole power of the Indians, and balanced the fate of the war between them and us.

THESE forts, being larger, were better garrisoned and supplied to stand a siege of some length, than the places that fell. Niagara was not attacked, the enemy judging it too strong.

THE officers who commanded the other two deserved the highest honour for the firmness with which they defended them, and the hardships they sustained rather than deliver up places of such importance.

MAJOR GLADWIN, in particular, who commanded at the Detroit, had to withstand the united and vigorous attacks of all the nations living upon the Lakes.

THE design of this publication, and the materials in my hands, lead me more immediately

rous and savage
very other place
ected that these
and the fate of
e.
r, and the conti-
ck all America
ated a great part
w most of those
us, which had
war, and one of
ed by the peace.
Detroit and Fort-
all that had been
and treasure. But
e, and we hope it
their importance,
d be paid to their
continued to awe
ada, and balance
m and us!
were better gar-
a siege of some
fell. Niagara was
ing it too strong.
oded the other two
the firmness with
the hardships they
up places of such
particular, who
ad so withstand the
all the nations liv-
ation, and the mar-
more immediate-
ly

INTRODUCTION. vii

ly to speak of the defence and relief of Fort Pitt.

THE Indians had early surrounded that place, and cut off all communication from it, even by message. Tho' they had no cannon, nor understood the methods of a regular siege, yet, with incredible boldness, they posted themselves under the banks of both rivers † by the walls of the fort, and continued as it were buried there, from day to day, with astonishing patience; pouring in an incessant storm of musquetry and fire arrows; hoping at length, by famine, by fire, or by harassing out the garrison, to carry their point.

CAPTAIN ECKEN, who commanded there, tho' he wanted several necessaries for sustaining a siege, and the fortifications had been greatly damaged by the floods, took all the precautions which art and judgment could suggest for the repair of the place, and repelling the enemy. His garrison, joined by the inhabitants, and surviving traders who had taken refuge there, seconded his efforts with resolution. Their situation was alarming, being remote from all immediate assistance, and having to deal with an enemy from whom they had no mercy to expect.

GENERAL AMHERST, the commander in chief, not being able to provide in time for the safety of the remote posts, bent his chief attention to the relief of the Detroit, Niagara, and Fort-Pitt. The communication with the two former was chiefly by water, from the province of New-York; and it was on that account the

† The Ohio and Monongahela, at the junction of which stands Fort Pitt.

WIT INTRODUCTION.

more easy to throw succours into them. The detachment sent to the Detroit arrived there on the 29th of July, 1763, but Captain Dairiel, who commanded that detachment, and seventy of his men, lost their lives in a rencounter with the Indians near the fort. Previous to this disaster he had passed thro' Niagara, and left a reinforcement there.

FORT PITT remained all this while in a most critical situation. No account could be obtained from the garrison, nor any relief sent to it, but by a long and tedious land march of near 200 miles beyond the settlements, and through those dangerous passes where the fate of Braddock, and others still rises on the imagination.

COL. BOUQUET was appointed to march to the relief of this fort, with a large quantity of military stores and provisions, escorted by the shattered remainder of the 42d and 97th regiments, lately returned in a dismal condition from the West-Indies, and far from being recovered of their fatigues at the siege of the Havannah. General Amherst, having at that time no other troops to spare, was obliged to employ them in a service which would have required men of the strongest constitution and vigour.

EARLY orders had been given to prepare a convoy of provisions on the frontiers of Pennsylvania, but such were the universal terror and consternation of the inhabitants, that when Col. Bouquet arrived at Carlisle, nothing had yet been done. A great number of the plantations had been plundered and burnt by the savages; many of the mills destroyed, and the full-ripe crops stood waving in the field, ready for the sickle, but the reapers were not to be found.

INTRODUCTION. 13

THE greatest part of the county of Cumberland, thro' which the army had to pass, was deserted, and the roads were covered with distressed families, flying from their settlement and destitute of all the necessaries of life.

In the midst of that general confusion, the supplies necessary for the expedition became very precarious, nor was it less difficult to procure horses and carriages for the use of the troops.

THE commander found that, instead of expecting such supplies from a miserable people, he himself was called by the voice of humanity to bestow on them some share of his own provisions to relieve their present exigency. However, in 18 days after his arrival at Carlisle, by the prudent and active measures which he pursued, joined to his knowledge of the country, and the diligence of the persons he employed, the convoy and carriages were procured with the assistance of the interior parts of the country, and the army proceeded.

THEIR march did not abate the fears of the deserted inhabitants. They knew the strength and ferocity of the enemy. They remembered the former defeats even of our best troops, and were full of diffidence and apprehensions on beholding the small number and sickly state of the regulars employed in this expedition. Without the least hopes, therefore, of success, they seemed only to wait for the fatal event, which they dreaded, to abandon all the country beyond the Susquehanna.

In such despondency of mind, it is not surprising, that tho' their whole was at stake, and depended intirely upon the fate of this little army, none of them offered to assist in the defence of the country, by joining the expedition; in which

2 INTRODUCTION.

they would have been of infinite service, being in general well acquainted with the woods, and excellent marksmen.

It cannot be contended that the defeat of the regular troops on this occasion, would have left the province of Pennsylvania in particular, exposed to the most imminent danger, from a victorious, daring, and barbarous enemy; for (excepting the frontier people of Cumberland county) the bulk of its industrious inhabitants is composed of merchants, tradesmen and farmers, unaccustomed to arms, and without a militia law.

THE legislature ordered, indeed, 700 men to be raised for the protection of the frontiers during the harvest; but what dependence could be placed in raw troops, newly raised and undisciplined? Under so many discouraging circumstances, the Colonel (deprived of all assistance from the provinces, and having none to expect from the General, who had sent him the last man that could be removed from the hospitals) had nothing else to trust to, but about 500 soldiers of approved courage and resolution indeed, but infirm, and entire strangers to the woods, and to this new kind of war. A number of them were even so weak, as not to be able to march, and sixty were carried in waggons to reinforce the garrisons of the small posts on the communication.

MEANWHILE Fort-Ligonier situated beyond the Allegheny-Mountains, was in the greatest danger of falling into the hands of the enemy, before the army could reach it. The blockade being very bad, and the garrison extremely weak, they had attacked it vigorously, but had been repulsed by the bravery and good conduct of Lieutenant Blane who commanded there.

THE

ON.

Service, being
the woods, and

the defeat of the
would have left
particular, expos-
from a victori-
ly; for (except
berland county)
ants is composed
rners, unaccus-
with law.

ed, 700 men to
the frontiers dur-
endence could be
ed and undiscip-
g circumstances,
distance from the
expect from the
the last man that
tals) had nothing
soldiers of approv-
ed, but infirm,
, and to this new
ers were even so
march, and sixty
reinforce the garri-
communication.

r situated beyond
is in the greatest
is of the enemy.
t. The blockade
extremely weak,
but had been re-
conduct of Lieu-
there.

THE

INTRODUCTION. xi

THE preservation of that post was of the ut-
most consequence, on account of its situation and
the quantity of military stores it contained,
which if the enemy could have got possession of,
would have enabled them to continue their attack
upon Fort-Pitt, and reduced the army to the
greatest straits. For an object of that impor-
tance, every risk was to be run; and the Colonel
determined to send through the woods, with pro-
per guides, a party of thirty men to join that
garrison. They succeeded by forced marches in
that hazardous attempt, not having been disco-
vered by the enemy till they came within sight of
the Fort, into which they threw themselves, af-
ter receiving some running shot.

PREVIOUS to that reinforcement of regulars,
20 volunteers, all good woodsmen, had been sent
to Fort-Ligonier by Capt. Ostry, who com-
manded at Fort-Bedford another very considera-
ble magazine of provisions, and military stores,
the principal and critical stage between Carlisle
and Fort-Pitt, being about 100 miles distance
from each. This fort was also in a ruinous con-
dition, and very weakly garrisoned, although the
two small intermediate posts, at the crossings of
the Juniata and of Stony Creek, had been aban-
doned to strengthen it.

HAPPY the distressed families, scattered for 12
or 15 miles round, and for protection, leaving
most of their effects a prey to the savages.

ALL the necessary precautions were taken by
the commanding officer, to prevent surprise, and
repel open force, as also to render ineffectual the
enemy's fire arrows. He armed all the fighting
men, who formed two companies of volunteers,
and did duty with the garrison till the arrival of

two companies of light infantry, detached as soon as possible from Colonel Bouquet's little army.

THESE two magazines being secured, the Colonel advanced to the remotest verge of our settlements, where he could receive no sort of intelligence of the number, position, or motions of the enemy. Not even at Fort-Bedford, where he arrived with his whole convoy on the 25th of July, for tho' the Indians did not attempt to attack the fort, they had by this time killed, scalped, and taken eighteen persons in that neighbourhood, and their sculking parties were so spread, that at last no express could escape them.

"This" (want of intelligence) "is often a very embarrassing circumstance in the conduct of a campaign in America. The Indians had better intelligence, and no sooner were they informed of the march of our Army, than they broke up the siege of Fort-Pitt, and took the route by which they knew we were to proceed, resolved to take the first advantageous opportunity of an attack on the march."

In this uncertainty of intelligence under which the Colonel laboured, he marched from Fort-Bedford the 28th of July, and as soon as he reached Fort-Ligonier, he determined very prudently to leave his waggons at that post, and to proceed only with the pack horses. Thus disburdened, the army continued their route. Before them lay a dangerous defile at Turtle Creek, several miles in length, commanded the whole way by high and craggy hills. This defile he intended to have passed the ensuing night, by a double or forced march; thereby, if possible, to elude the vigilance of so alert an enemy, proposing only to make a short halt in his way, to refresh the Troops, at Bushy-Run.

WHEN

INTRODUCTION. xii

WHEN they came within half a mile of that place, about one in the afternoon, (August 3th, 1763) after an harrassing march of seventeen miles, and just as they were expecting to relax from their fatigue, they were suddenly attacked by the Indians, on their advanced guard; which being speedily and firmly supported, the enemy was beat off, and even pursued to a considerable distance.

† BUT the flight of these barbarians must often be considered as a part of the engagement, (if we may use the expression) rather than a dereliction of the field. The moment the pursuit ended, they returned with renewed vigour to the attack. Several other parties, who had been in ambush in some high grounds which lay along the flanks of the army, now started up at once, and falling with a resolution equal to that of their companions, galled our troops with a most obstinate fire.

It was necessary to make a general charge with the whole line to dislodge them from these heights. This charge succeeded; but still the success produced no decisive advantage; for as soon as the savages were driven from one post, they still appeared on another, till by constant reinforcements they were at length able to surround the whole detachment, and attack the convoy which had been left in the rear.

† The above quotation is from the writer already mentioned, and seems so accurately and elegantly drawn up, from the account of this engagement, sent to his Majesty's ministers, that nothing better can be inserted in its room. There are but one or two small mistakes in it, which are here corrected.

WHEN

THIS

• This manoeuvre obliged the main body to
 • fall back in order to protect it. The action,
 • which grew every moment hotter and hotter,
 • now became general. Our troops were attack-
 • ed on every side; the savages supported their
 • spirit throughout; but the steady behaviour of
 • the English troops, who were not thrown into
 • the least confusion by the very discouraging na-
 • ture of this service, in the end prevailed; they
 • repulsed the enemy, and drove them from all
 • their posts with fixed bayonets.

• The engagement ended only with the day,
 • having continued from one without any inter-
 • mission.

• The ground, on which the action ended,
 • was not altogether inconvenient for an encamp-
 • ment. The convoy and the wounded were in
 • the middle, and the troops, disposed in a circle,
 • encompassed the whole. In this manner, and
 • with little repose, they passed an anxious night,
 • obliged to the strictest vigilance by an enter-
 • prising enemy who had surrounded them.

• Those who have only experienced the su-
 • perstices and dangers of a campaign in Europe,
 • can scarcely form an idea of what is to be done
 • and endured in an American war. To act in
 • a country cultivated and inhabited, where
 • roads are made, magazines are established, and
 • hospitals provided; where there are good towns
 • to retreat to in case of misfortune; or, at the
 • worst, a generous enemy to yield to, from
 • whom no consolation, but the honour of vic-
 • tory, can be wanting; this may be considered
 • as the exercise of a spirited and adventurous
 • mind, rather than a rigid contest where all is
 • at stake, and mutual destruction the object:
 • and as a contention between rivals for glory,
 • rather

main body to
The action,
and hotter,
were attack-
supported their
behaviour of
t thrown into
encouraging re-
sented; they
them from all

with the day,
out any inter-

action ended,
or an encamp-
ment were in
ed in a circle,
manner, and
anxious night,
by an enter-
ed them.

rejoiced the se-
ign in Europe,
it is to be done
ar. To act in
abited, where
established, and
are good towns
ne; or, at the
yield to, from
honour of vic-
y be considered
adventurous
est where all is
tion the object:
rivals for glory,
rather

INTRODUCTION.

25

• rather than a real struggle between sanguinary
• enemies. But in an American campaign every
• thing is terrible; the face of the country, the
• climate, the enemy. There is no refreshment
• for the healthy, nor relief for the sick. A vast
• inhospitable desert, unsafe and treacherous,
• surrounds them, where victories are not deci-
• sive, but defeats are ruinous; and simple death
• is the least misfortune which can happen to
• them. This forms a service truly critical, in
• which all the firmness of the body and mind is
• put to the severest trial; and all the exertions
• of courage and address are called out. If the
• actions of these rude campaigns are of less dig-
• nity, the adventures in them are more interest-
• ing to the heart, and more amusing to the
• imagination, than the events of a regular war.
• But to return to the party of English, whom
• we left in the woods. At the first dawn of
• light the savages began to declare themselves,
• all about the camp, at the distance of about
• 500 yards; and by shouting and yelling in the
• most horrid manner, quite round that exten-
• sive circumference, endeavoured to strike terror
• by an ostentation of their numbers, and their
• ferocity.
• After this alarming preparative, they at-
• tacked our forces, and, under the favour of an
• incessant fire, made several bold efforts to pe-
• netrate into the camp. They were repulsed in
• every attempt, but by no means discouraged
• from new ones. Our troops, continually vic-
• torious, were continually in danger. They
• were besides extremely fatigued with a long
• march, and with the equally long action, of
• the preceding day; and they were distressed to
• the

xxi INTRODUCTION.

the last degree by a total want of water, much more intolerable than the enemy's fire.

THUS to their convoy, they could not lose sight of it for a moment, without exposing, not only that interesting object, but their wounded men, to fall a prey to the savages, who pressed them on every side. To move was impracticable. Many of the horses were lost, and many of the divers, stupefied by their fears, hid themselves in the bushes, and were incapable of hearing or obeying orders.

THIS situation became extremely critical and perplexing, having experienced that the most lively efforts made no impression upon an enemy, who always gave way when pressed; but who, the moment the pursuit was over, returned with as much alacrity as ever to the attack. Besieged rather than engaged, attacked without interruption, and without decision; able neither to advance nor to retreat, they saw before them the most melancholy prospect of crumbling away by degrees, and entirely perishing without revenge or honour, in the midst of those dreadful perils. The fate of Braddock was every moment before their eyes; but they were more ably conducted.

THE commander was sensible that every thing depended upon bringing the savages to a close engagement, and to stand their ground when attacked. Their audacity, which had increased with their success, seemed favourable to this design. He endeavoured, therefore, to increase their confidence as much as possible.

For that purpose he contrived the following stratagem. Our troops were posted on an eminence, and formed a circle round their convoy from

water, much
 fire.
 could not lose
 out exposing,
 but their
 the savages,
 To move
 horses were
 stupefied by
 the bullets, and
 dying orders
 extremely critical
 nced that the
 ection upon an
 when pressed,
 uit was over,
 as ever to the
 raged; attack-
 without decision
 retreat, they
 mcholy prospect
 s, and entirely
 honour, in the
 The fate of
 ore their eyes
 ed.
 ible that every
 the savages to a
 ed their ground
 ciousness, which
 cess, seemed fa-
 se endeavoured
 fidence as much
 ed the following
 osted on an em-
 and their convoy
 from

INTRODUCTION. xvii.

from the preceding night, which order they
 still retained. Col. Bouquet gave directions,
 that two companies of his troops, who had
 been posted in the most advanced situations,
 should fall within the circle; the troops on the
 right and left immediately opened their fires, and
 filled up the vacant space, that they might
 seem to cover their retreat. Another company
 of light infantry, with one of grenadiers, were
 ordered "to lie in ambush," to support
 the two first companies of grenadiers, who
 moved on the feigned retreat, and were in-
 tended to begin the real attack. The dispositi-
 ons were well made, and the plan executed
 without the least confusion.
 The savages gave entirely into the snare.
 The thin line of troops, which took possession
 of the ground which the two companies of light
 foot had left, being brought in nearer to the
 center of the circle, the barbarians mistook
 those motions for a retreat, abandoned the
 woods which covered them, hurried headlong
 on, and advancing with the most daring intrep-
 idity, galled the English troops with their
 heavy fire. But at the very moment when,
 certain of success, they thought themselves
 masters of the camp, the two first companies
 made a sudden turn, and falling out from a
 part of the hill, which could not be observed,
 fell furiously upon their right flank.
 The savages, though they found themselves
 disappointed and exposed, preserved their re-
 collection, and resolutely returned the fire
 which they had received. Then it was the su-
 periority of combined strength and discipline
 appeared. On the second charge they could
 no longer sustain the irresistible shock of the
 regular

will INTRODUCTION

regular troops, who rushing upon them, killed many, and put the rest to flight.

At the instant when the stranger broke themselves to flight, the other two companies, which had been ordered to support the first, rose from the ambuscade, marched to the enemy, and gave them their full fire. This accomplished their defeat. The four companies now united, did not give them time to turn behind them, but pursued the enemy till they were totally dispersed.

The other bodies of the Avignons attempted nothing. They were kept in awe during the engagement by the rest of the British troops, who were so posted as to be ready to fall on them upon the least motion. Having been witness to the defeat of their companions, without any effort to support or assist them, they at length followed their example and fled.

This judicious and successful manoeuvre rescued the party from the most imminent danger. The victory secured the field, and cleared all the adjacent woods. But still the march was so difficult, and the army had suffered so much, and so many horses were lost, that before they were able to proceed, they were reluctantly obliged to destroy such part of their baggage or provisions as they could not carry with them for want of horses. Being hindered by this sacrifice, they proceeded to Saint Remy, where finding water, they encamped.

This enemy lost about fifty men on this occasion, some of them their chief warriors; which they regarded as a very severe stroke. They had likewise many wounded in the pursuit. The English lost about fifty men and had about fifty wounded.

INTRODUCTION. xix

THE savages, thus signally defeated in all their attempts to cut off this reinforcement upon its march, began to retreat with the utmost precipitation to their remote settlements, wholly giving up their designs against Fort-Pitt; at which place Col. Bouquet arrived safe with his convoy, four days after the action; receiving no further molestation on the road, except a few scattered shot from a disheartened and flying army.

HENCE the Colonel was obliged to put an end to the operations of this campaign, not having a sufficient force to pursue the enemy beyond the Ohio and take advantage of the victory obtained over them; nor having any reason to expect a timely reinforcement from the provinces in their distressed situation. He was therefore forced to content himself with supplying Fort-Pitt, and other places on the communication, with provisions, ammunition, and stores: stationing his small army to the best advantage he could, against the approach of winter.

THE transactions of the succeeding campaign will be the subject of the following work, and we shall conclude this introduction, by stating the sense which his Majesty was pleased to entertain, of the conduct and bravery of the officers and army, on this trying occasion.

HEAD

INTRODUCTION

HEAD-QUARTERS, New-York, Jan. 5, 1764.

ORDERS.

HIS Majesty has been graciously pleased
to signify to the commander in chief,
his royal approbation of the conduct and bra-
very of Col. Bouquet, and the officers and
troops under his command, in the two actions
of the 3^d and 6th of August; in which, not-
withstanding the many circumstances of dif-
ficulty and distress they laboured under, and
the unusual spirit and resolution of the Indians,
they repelled and defeated the repeated attacks
of the Savages, and conducted their convoy
safe to Fort Pitt.

Signed MONTAGUE,

Major of Brigade.

To Colonel BOUQUET,
an officer commanding at Fort Pitt.

ANN

77

Jan. 5, 1764

iously pleased
under in chief,
duct and bra-
e officers and
e two actions
which, not-
stances of dif-
ed under, and
of the Indians,
peated attacks
their convoy

WCHIFF,
e of Brigade.

A.N.







AN
Historical ACCOUNT

OF
COLONEL BOUQUET'S EXPEDITION

Against the OHIO INDIANS in the Year 1764.

IN the preceding Introduction, some account hath been given of the sudden, treacherous and unprovoked attack, made by the Indians upon the frontiers of Pennsylvania, Maryland, and Virginia, soon after the publication of the general Peace, at a time when we were but just beginning to respire from our former calamities, and looked for an approach of quiet on every side. The principal transactions of the campaign 1763 have likewise been briefly recapitulated, and the reader informed by what means the editor became possessed of the valuable papers, which have enabled him to bring the history of this Indian war to a conclusion, and furnished the materials of the following sheets.

COLONEL BOUQUET, as before mentioned, not having a sufficient number of troops to garrison the different posts, under his command, and at the same time to cross the Ohio and take advantage of the defection into which he had thrown the enemy, by the defeat at Bushy Run, was ob-

2 Col. BOUQUET'S Expedition

liged to restrain his operations to the supplying the forts with provisions, ammunition and other necessities.

In the execution of this service, he received no annoyance from the enemy, for they now saw themselves not only forced to give up their designs against FORT-PITT; but, retreating beyond the Ohio, they deserted their former towns, and abandoned all the country between Presque-lle and Sanduski; not thinking themselves safe till they arrived at Muskingum.

HERE they began to form new settlements, and remained quiet during the winter. But, in the mean time, having supplied themselves with powder, &c. from the French traders, (and now flattering themselves that the great distance of their settlements would render them inaccessible to our troops) the ensuing spring 1764 presented these savage enemies afresh on our frontiers, ravaging and murdering with their usual barbarity.

To chastise them for their perfidy, General Gage resolved to attack them on two different sides, and to force them from our frontiers, by carrying the war into the heart of their own country. With this view, he destined a corps of troops to proceed under Col. Bradstreet, to act against the Wiandots, Ottawas, Chipwas and other nations, living upon or near the lakes; while another corps, under the command of Col. Bouquet, should attack the Delawares, Shawanese, Mingoes, Mohickons, and other nations, between the Ohio and the lakes.

THAT two corps were to act in concert; and as that of Col. Bradstreet could be ready much sooner than the other, he was to proceed to Detroit, Michilimackinac and other places.

On

Expedition

the supplying the
on and other ne-

vice, he received
for they now saw
give up their de-
retreating be-
their former towns,
between Presque-
themselves safe

new settlements,
winter. But, in
themselves with
raders, (and now
great distance of
them inaccessible
1764 presented
in our frontiers;
their usual bar-

perfidy, General
on two different
our frontiers; by
of their own coun-
stined a corps of
Bradstreet, to act
as, Chipwas and
near the lakes,
command of Col.
Delaware, Shaw,
and other nations,

act in concert;
et could be ready
he was to proceed
and other places.
On

Against the OHIO INDIANS 1764. 3

On his return, he was to encamp and remain at Sanduski, to awe, by that position, the numerous tribes of western Indians, so as to prevent their sending any assistance to the Ohio Indians, while Colonel Bouquet should execute his plan of attacking them in the heart of their

ments.
Col. Bouquet's expedition was to proceed altogether by land, and was on that account attended with great difficulties. His men were to penetrate through a continued depth of woods, and a savage unexplored country; without roads, without posts, and without a retreat if they failed of success. When once engaged in these deserts, they had no convoy, nor any kind of assistance to expect. Every thing was to be carried with them—their ammunition, baggage, tools, stores, and provisions necessary for the troops during the whole expedition. And besides, they were liable to many embarrassments, and difficulties which no prudence could foresee, scarce any caution prevent; so that, in this account, sundry things, which, in the usual method of conducting military operations, might not be thought worthy of a detail, may nevertheless be found highly servicable to those who may afterwards be employed in this species of war, which is new to Europeans, who were formerly to be instructed in it by experience, and in many instances even by the savages themselves.

PART of the 42d and 60th regiments were ordered on this expedition, and were to be joined by two hundred friendly Indians, and the troops required of Virginia and Pennsylvania. The Indians never came, and the Virginians pleaded their inability to raise men, having already in pay about 700 militia for the defence of their own frontier.

4 Col. BOUQUET'S Expedition

frontier. In Pennsylvania, a bill for raising 1000 men was passed May 30th; but, with the utmost diligence that could be used, the number could not be completed till the beginning of August.

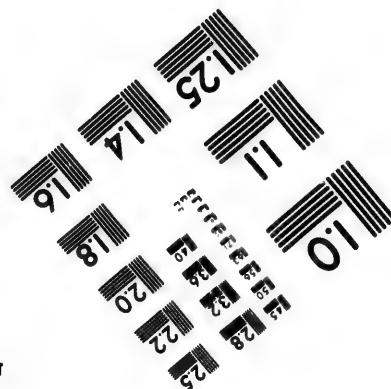
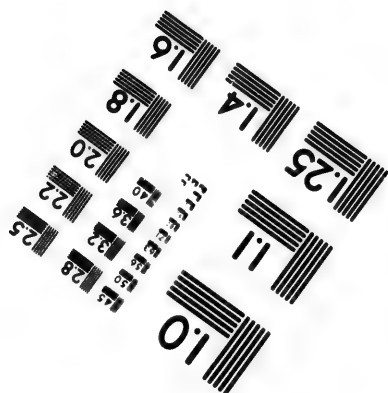
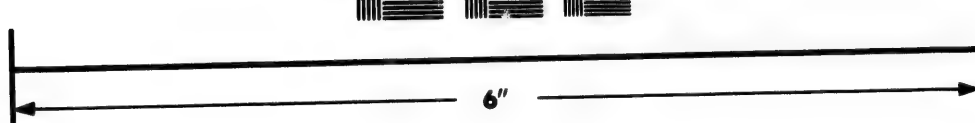
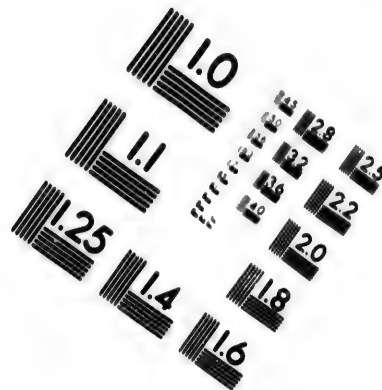
On the 5th of that month, the men being assembled at Carlisle, one hundred and eighteen miles to the westward of Philadelphia, Governor Penn, who had accompanied Col. Bouquet to that place, acquainted the two Pennsylvania battalions with the necessity we were laid under of chastising the Indians, "for their repeated and unprovoked barbarities on the inhabitants of the Province; a just retributions of which added to a remembrance of the loyalty and courage of our provincial troops on former occasions, he did not doubt, would animate them to do honour to their country; and that they could not but hope to be crowned with success, as they were to be united with the same regular troops, and under the same able commander, who had by themselves, on the very day, the memorable 5th of August in the preceding year, sustained the repeated attacks of the savages, and obtained a complete victory over them." He also reminded them of the exemplary punishments that would be laid on the guilty crime of desertion; if any of them were capable of so far forgetting their solemn oath and duty to their king and country, as to be involved in it.

Col. Bouquet then assumed the command of the regular and provincial troops, and the following days were spent in the necessary preparations for this march; the Colonel giving the most express orders for the officers and men to observe strict discipline, and not to commit the least violation of the civil rights or peace of the inhabitants.

Expedition

for raising 1000
with the utmost
number could
ing of August.
the men being at
and, eighteen
lphia, Governor
Col. Bouquet to
Pennsylvania bet-
were laid under
their repeated
the inhabitants of
except of which
of the loyalty and
upon former oc-
would, animate
country, and that
be crowned with
united with the
der the same able
themselves, on the
5th. of August in
the repeated re-
trained a complete
renewed them
that would be
of desolation, if
disunion forgetting
to their king and
n it." - 1712
and the command
and the loss
the necessary prep
Colonel giving the
the men on
not to commit the
the peace of the
inhabitants.





Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1985

h
n
c
h
I
e
v
n
e
to
h
A
y
a
d
m
a
r
t
e
f
F
a
w
S
w
th
on
th
P
he
Br
ac
co

inhabitants.—He, at the same time, made the most prudent regulations for a safe and commodious carriage of the baggage, taking care to rid himself of all unnecessary incumbrances.

THE 13th of August this small army got to Fort Loudoun; but notwithstanding all the precautions taken to prevent desertion, the Pennsylvania troops were now reduced to about 700 men. The Colonel was therefore under a necessity to apply to the government of that province to enable him to complete their number to the full complement; which was generously granted by a resolve of the Governor and Commissioners August 16th; and the army advancing now beyond the settled parts of Pennsylvania, he made application to the colony of Virginia, where (under the countenance of Governor Fauquier the men wanted were soon raised, and joined) the army at Pittsburgh, about the latter end of September.

NOTHING material happened in their march from Fort Loudoun to Fort Pitt, (formerly Fort Du Quesne) on the Ohio, three hundred and twenty miles west from Philadelphia; at which place Col. Bouquet arrived the 17th of September.

DURING this interval, several large convoys were forwarded under strong escorts; and though the enemy continued their ravages all that time on the frontiers, they durst not attack any of those convoys, which all arrived safe at Fort Pitt.

WHILE Col. Bouquet was at Fort Loudoun, he received dispatches by express from Colonel Bradstreet, dated from Presque-Isle August 14th acquainting him that he (Colonel Bradstreet) had concluded a peace with the Delawares and Shawanese;

6 Col. BOUQUET's Expedition

wanese; but Colonel Bouquet perceiving clearly that they were not sincere in their intentions, as they continued their murders and depredations, he determined to prosecute his plan without remission, till he received further instructions from General Gage; who, upon the same principles, refused to ratify the treaty, and renewed his orders to both armies to attack the enemy.

ABOUT the time of Colonel Bouquet's arrival at Fort Pitt, ten Indians appeared on the north side of the Ohio, desiring a conference, which stratagem the savages had made use of before, to obtain intelligence of our numbers and intentions. Three of the party consented, though with apparent reluctance, to come over to the Fort; and as they could give no satisfactory reason for their visit, they were detained as spies, and their associates fled back to their town.

On the 20th of September Colonel Bouquet sent one of the above three Indians after them with a message, in substance as follows—"I have received an account from Colonel Bradstreet that your nations had begged for peace, which he had consented to grant, upon assurance that you have recalled all your warriors from our frontiers; and in consequence thereof, I would not have proceeded against your towns, if I had not heard that, in open violation of your engagements, you have since murdered several of our people."

"As soon as the rest of the army joins me, which I expect immediately, I was therefore determined to have attacked you, as a people whose promises can no more be relied on. But I will put it once more in your power to save yourselves and your families from total destruction, by giving us satisfaction for the hostilities against

Expedition

perceiving clearly
their intentions, as
depredations, he
without remissi-
ons from Ge-
ne principles, re-
newed his orders
emy.

Bouquet's arrival
red, on the north
ontenance; which
use of before, to
ers and intentions.
though with ap-
ver to the Fort;
efactory reason for
as spies, and their
VR.

Colonel Bouquet
Indians after them,
follows—"I have
Colonel Bradstreet
d for peace, which
upon assurance that
warriors from our
ce thereof, I would
t your towns, if I
en violation of your
ce murdered several

the army joins me,
y, I was therefore
ed you, as a people
re be relied on. But
your power to save
es from total destruc-
ion for the hostilities
" against

Against the OHIO INDIANS, 1764. 7

" against us. And first you are to leave the path
" open for my expresses from hence to Detroit;
" and as I am now to send two men with dis-
" patches to Colonel Bradstreet who commands
" on the lakes, I desire to know whether you
" will send two of your people with them to bring
" them safe back with an answer? And if they
" receive any injury either in going or coming,
" or if the letters are taken from them, I will
" immediately put the Indians now in my power
" to death, and will shew no mercy for the fu-
" ture to any of your nations that shall fall into
" my hands. I allow you ten days to have my
" letters delivered at Detroit, and ten days to
" bring me back an answer."

He added "that he had lately had it in his pow-
" er, while they remained on the other side of
" the river, to have put their whole party to
" death, which punishment they had deserved
" by their former treachery; and that if they
" did not improve the clemency now offered to
" them, by returning back as soon as possible
" with all their prisoners, they might expect to
" feel the full weight of a just vengeance and
" resentment."

We have been the more particular in our ac-
count of this first transaction with the Indians;
because the Colonel's firm and determined con-
duct in opening the campaign, had happy effects
in the prosecution of it, and shews by what me-
thods these faithless savages are to be best reduced
to reason.

On the 1st of October, two of the Six Nation
tribes, an Onondago and Oneida Indian, came
to Fort Pitt, and under colour of our ancient
friendship with them, and their pretended regard

8 Col. BOUQUET'S Expedition

to the English, endeavoured to dissuade the Colonel from proceeding with the army. They told him that his force was not sufficient to withstand the power of the numerous nations through whose countries he was to pass, and assured him that if he would wait a little, they would all come and make peace with him; at the same time recommending it particularly to him to send back the two Indians detained as spies. These little arts being clearly made use of to spin out the season till the approach of winter should render it impossible to proceed, they made but little impression. He told them that he could not depend on the promises of the Delawares and Shawanese; and was determined to proceed to Tuscarawas, where, if they had any thing to say, he would hear them.

In the mean time, he was using the utmost diligence to prepare for his march, and was obliged to enforce the severest discipline. One woman belonging to each corps, and two nurses for the general hospital, were all that were permitted to follow the army. The other women in the camp, and those unnecessary in the garrison, were ordered immediately down the country into the settlements. Two soldiers were shot for desertion; an example which became absolutely necessary to suppress a crime which, in such an expedition, would have been attended with fatal consequences, by weakening an army already too small.

COLONEL BOUQUET, having at length, with great difficulty, collected his troops, formed his magazines, and provided for the safety of the posts he was to leave behind him, was ready on the 2d of October to proceed from Fort Pitt, with about 1500

s Expedition

to dissuade the Co-
army. They told
sufficient to withstand
ons through whose
assured him that if
would all come and
same time recom-
n to send back the

These little arts
spin out the season
ould render it impos-
sible to make any
little impression.
not depend on the
and Shawanese; and
Tuscarowas, where,
ay, he would hear

s using the utmost
arch, and was oblig-
discipline. One woman
d two nurses for the
at were permitted to
women in the camp,
garrison, were or-
the country into the
were shot for deserti-
e absolutely necessary
in such an expediti-
ended with fatal conse-
n army already too

having at length, with
his troops, formed his
the safety of the posts
, was ready on the ad-
Fort Pitt, with about
1500

Against the OHIO INDIANS, 1764. 9

1500 men, including drivers and other necessary
followers of the army.

THE Colonel, expressing the greatest confi-
dence in the bravery of the troops, told them,
" he did not doubt but this war would soon be
" ended, under God, to their own honor, and
" the future safety of their country, provided the
" men were strictly obedient to orders, and guard-
" ed against the surprises and sudden attacks of
" a treacherous enemy, who never dared to face
" British troops in any open field; that the dis-
" tance of the enemy's towns, and the clearing
" roads to them, must necessarily require a con-
" siderable time; that the troops in those deserts,
" had no other supplies to expect but the ammu-
" nition and provisions they carried with them;
" and that therefore the utmost care and frugality
" would be necessary in the use of them." He
published the several penalties against those who
should be found guilty of stealing or embezzling
any part of them, and ordered his march in the
following manner.—

A corps of Virginia * volunteers advanced
before the whole; detaching three scouting par-
ties. One of them, furnished with a guide, march-
ed in the center path, which the army was to
follow. The other two extended themselves in
a line a-breast, on the right and left of the afore-
said path, to reconnoitre the woods.

UNDER cover of this corps, the ax-men, con-
sisting of all the artificers, and two companies of
light infantry, followed in three divisions, under
the direction of the chief engineer, to clear three

* These were the men raised in Virginia to com-
plement the Pennsylvania troops, and were in the pay
of the last mentioned province.

different paths, in which the troops and the convoy followed, viz —

THE front-face of the square, composed of part of the 42d regiment, marched in a column, two deep, in the center path.

THE right face of the square, composed of the remainder of the 42d and of the 60th regiment, marched in a single file in the right-hand path.

THE first battalion of Pennsylvanians composed the left face, marching in like manner in the path to the left of the center.

THE corps de reserve, composed of two platoons of grenadiers, followed the right and left faces of the square.

THE 2d battalion of Pennsylvanians formed the rear face of the square, and followed the corps de reserve, each in a single file on the right and left hand paths; all these troops covering the convoy, which moved in the center path.

A PARTY of light horse-men marched behind the rear-face of the square, followed by another corps of Virginia volunteers, forming the rear-guard.

THE Pennsylvania volunteers, dividing themselves equally, and marching in a single file, at a proper distance, flanked the right and left faces of the square.

THIS was the general order of march. Nor was less attention paid to particular matters of a subordinate nature. The ammunition and tools were placed in the rear of the first column, or front face of the square, followed by the officers' baggage, and tents. The oxen and sheep came after the baggage, in separate droves, properly guarded. The provisions came next to the baggage, in four divisions, or brigades of pack-horses, each conducted by a horse master.

THE

Expedition
pe and the con-
re, composed of
ed in a column,
composed of the
60th regiment.
ght-hand path.
anians composed
anner in the path
posed of two pla-
e right and left
anians formed the
wed the corps de
the right and left
ring the convoy,
marched behind
owed by another
orming the rear-
a, dividing them-
a single file, at a
t and left faces of
of march. Nor
cular matters of a
unition and tools
first column, or
ed by the officers'
n and sheep came
droves, properly
next to the bag-
es of pack-horses,
er.

THE

Against the OHIO INDIANS 1764. 11

THE troops were ordered to observe the most profound silence, and the men to march at two yards distance from one another. When the line or any part of it halted, the whole were to face outwards; and if attacked on their march, they were to halt immediately, ready to form the square when ordered. The light horse were then to march into the square, with the cattle, provisions, ammunition and baggage. Proper dispositions were likewise made in case of an attack in the night; and for encampments, guards, communications between the sentries, signals, and the like.

THINGS being thus settled, the army decamped from Fort-Pitt on Wednesday October 3d, and marched about one mile and an half over a rich level country, with stately timber, to camp No. 2. a strong piece of ground, pleasantly situated, with plenty of water and food for cattle.

THURSDAY October 4th, having proceeded about two miles, they came to the Ohio, at the beginning of the narrows, and from thence followed the course of the river along a flat gravelly beach, about six miles and a quarter; with several islands on their left, the lowermost about six miles long, with a rising ground running across, and gently sloping on both sides to its banks, which are high and upright. At the lower end of this island, the army left the river, marching through good land, broken with small hollows to camp No. 3; this day's march being nine miles and a quarter.—

FRIDAY October 5th. In this day's march the army passed through Logg-towns, situated seventeen miles and an half, fifty seven perches, by the path, from Fort-Pitt. This place was

12 Col. BOUQUET'S Expedition

noted before the last war for the great trade carried on there by the English and French; but its inhabitants, the Shawanese and Delawares, abandoned it in the year 1750. The lower town extended about sixty perches over a rich bottom to the foot of a low steep ridge, on the summit of which, near the declivity, stood the upper town, commanding a most agreeable prospect over the lower, and quite across the Ohio, which is about 500 yards wide here, and by its majestic easy current adds much to the beauty of the place. Proceeding beyond Logg's-town, through a fine country, interspersed with hills and rich valleys, watered by many rivulets, and covered with stately timber, they came to camp No. 4, on a level piece of ground, with a thicket in the rear, a small precipice round the front, with a run of water at the foot, and good food for cattle. This day's march was nine miles, one half, and fifty three perches.

SATURDAY October 6th, at about three miles distance from this camp, they came again to the Ohio, pursuing its course half a mile farther, and then turning off, over a steep ridge, they crossed Big Beaver-creek, which is twenty perches wide, the ford stony and pretty deep. It runs through a rich vale, with a pretty strong current, its banks high, the upland adjoining it very good, the timber tall and young. About a mile below its confluence with the Ohio, stood formerly a large town, on a steep bank, built by the French of square logs, with stone chimneys, for some of the Shawanese, Delaware and Mingo tribes, who abandoned it in the year 1758, when the French deserted Fort Du Quebec. Near the fording of Beaver-creek also stood about seven houses, which were deserted and destroyed by the Indians, after their

Expedition

great trade car-
French; but its
Delawares, aban-
lower town ex-
a rich bottom to
n the summit of
the upper town,
prospect over the
which is about
its majestic easy
ty of the place.
through a fine
and rich valleys,
covered with state-
No. 4; on a level
et in the rear, &
with a run of
for cattle. This
e half, and fifty

about three miles
ame again to the
mile farther, and
dge, they crossed
ty perches wide,
It runs through
current, its banks
y good, the tim-
at a mile below
stood formerly a
lk by the French
neys, for some of
ingo tribes, who
when the French
ar, the fording of
en houses, which
the Indians, after
their

Against the OHIO INDIANS, 1764 13

their defeat at Bushy-run, when they forsook all their remaining settlements in this part of the country, as has been mentioned above.

ABOUT two miles before the army came to Beaver-creek, one of our people who had been made prisoner by six Delawares about a week before, near Fort Bedford, having made his escape from them, came and informed the Colonel that these Indians had the day before fallen in with the army, but kept themselves concealed, being surprised at our numbers. Two miles beyond Beaver-creek, by two small springs, was seen the skull of a child, that had been fixed on a pole by the Indians. The Tracks of 15 Indians were this day discovered. The camp No. 5 is seven miles one quarter and fifty seven perches from big Beaver-creek; the whole march of this day being about twelve miles.

SUNDAY 7th October, passing a high ridge, they had a fine prospect of an extensive country to the right, which in general appeared level, with abundance of tall timber. The camp No. 6 lies at the foot of a steep descent, in a rich valley, on a strong ground, three sides thereof surrounded by a hollow, and on the fourth side a small hill, which was occupied by a detached guard. This day's march was six miles sixty-five perches.

MONDAY 8th October, the army crossed little Beaver-creek, and one of its branches. This creek is eight perches wide, with a good ford, the country about it interspersed with hills, rivulets and rich valleys, like that described above. Camp No. 7 lies by a small run on the side of a hill, commanding the ground about it, and is distant eleven miles one quarter and forty nine perches from the last encampment.

B 5

TUESDAY

14 Col. BOUQUET'S Expedition

TUESDAY October 9th. In this day's march, the path divided into two branches, that to the southwest leading to the lower towns upon the Muskingum. In the forks of the path stand several trees painted by the Indians, in a hieroglyphic manner, denoting the number of wars in which they have been engaged, and the particulars of their success in prisoners and scalps. The camp No. 8. lies on a run, and level piece of ground, with Yellow creek close on the left, and a rising ground near the rear of the right face. The path after the army left the forks was so brushy and entangled, that they were obliged to cut all the way before them, and also to lay several bridges, in order to make it passable for the horses; so that this day they proceeded only five miles, three quarters and seventy perches.

WEDNESDAY 10th. Marched one mile with Yellow creek on the left at a small distance all the way, and crossed it at a good ford fifty feet wide; proceeding through an alternate succession of small hills and rich vales, finely watered with rivulets, to camp No. 9. seven miles and sixty perches in the whole.

THURSDAY 11th. Crossed a branch of Muskingum river about fifty feet wide, the country much the same as that described above, discovering a good deal of free stone. The camp No. 10. had this branch of the river parallel to its left face, and lies ten miles one quarter and forty perches from the former encampment.

FRIDAY 12th. Keeping the aforesaid creek on their left, they marched through much fine land, watered with small rivers and springs; proceeding likewise through several savannahs or cleared spots, which are by nature extremely beautiful; the second which they passed being, in particular, one

Expedition

this day's march, cher, that to the towns upon the path stand seven in a hieroglyphic of wars in which the particulars of alps. The camp piece of ground, left, and a rising face. The path was so brushy and aged to cut all the way several bridges, for the horses; so y five miles, three.

hed one mile with a small distance all good ford fifty feet alternate succession finely watered with n miles and sixty

a branch of Musk- wide, the country ed above, discover- The camp No. 10. r. parallel to its left e quarter and forty mpment.

he aforesaid creek on ough much fine land, d springs; proceed- savannahs or cleared extremely beautiful; being, in particular, one

Against the OHIO INDIANS, 1764. 15

one continued plain of near two miles, with a fine rising ground forming a semicircle round the right hand side, and a pleasant stream of water at about a quarter of a mile distant on the left. The camp No. 11. has the above-mentioned branch of Muskingam on the left, and is distant ten miles and three quarters from the last encampment.

SATURDAY 13th. Crossed Nemeshelas creek, about fifty feet wide, a little above where it empties itself into the aforesaid branch of Muskingam, having in their way a pleasant prospect over a large plain, for near two miles on the left. A little further, they came to another small river which they crossed about fifty perches above where it empties into the said branch of Muskingam. Here a high ridge on the right, and the creek close on the left, form a narrow defile about seventy perches long. Passing afterwards over a very rich bottom, they came to the main branch of Muskingam, about seventy yards wide, with a good ford. A little below and above the forks of this river is Tuscarawas, a place exceedingly beautiful by situation, the lands rich on both sides of the river; the country on the north-west side being an entire level plain, upwards of five miles in circumference. From the ruined houses appearing here, the Indians who inhabited the place and are now with the Delawares, are supposed to have had about one hundred and fifty warriors. This camp No. 11. is distant eight miles nineteen perches from the former.

SUNDAY 14th. The army remained in camp; and two men who had been dispatched by Colonel Bouquet from Fort Pitt, with letters for Colonel Bradstreet, returned and reported? —
“ That, within a few miles of this place, they “ had

16 Col. BOUQUET'S Expedition

" had been made prisoners by the Delawares,
" and carried to one of their towns sixteen miles
" from hence, where they were kept, till the
" savages, knowing of the arrival of the army
" here, set them at liberty, ordering them to
" acquaint the Colonel that the head men of the
" Delawares and Shawanese were coming as soon
" as possible to treat of peace with them."

MONDAY 15th. The army moved two miles
forty peches further down the Muskingum to
camp No. 13, situated on a very high bank, with
the river at the foot of it, which is upwards of
100 yards wide at this place, with a fine level
country at some distance from its banks, produc-
ing stately timber, free from underwood, and
plenty of food for cattle.

THE day following, six Indians came to inform
the Colonel that all their chiefs were assembled a-
bout eight miles from the camp, and were ready
to treat with him of peace, which they were ear-
nestly desirous of obtaining. He returned for an-
swer that he would meet them the next day in a
bower at some distance from the camp. In the
mean time, he ordered a small stockaded fort to
be built to deposit provisions for the use of the
troops on their return; and to lighten the con-
voy.

As several large bodies of Indians were now
within a few miles of the camp, whose former
instances of treachery, although they now de-
clared they came for peace, made it prudent to
trust nothing to their intentions, the strictest or-
ders were repeated to prevent a surprise.

WEDNESDAY 17th. The Colonel, with
most of the regular troops, Virginia volunteers
and light horse, marched from the camp to the
tower erected for the congress. And soon after the

Expedition

the Delaware, six
miles, till the
of the army
iering them to
ead men of the
coming as soon
t them."

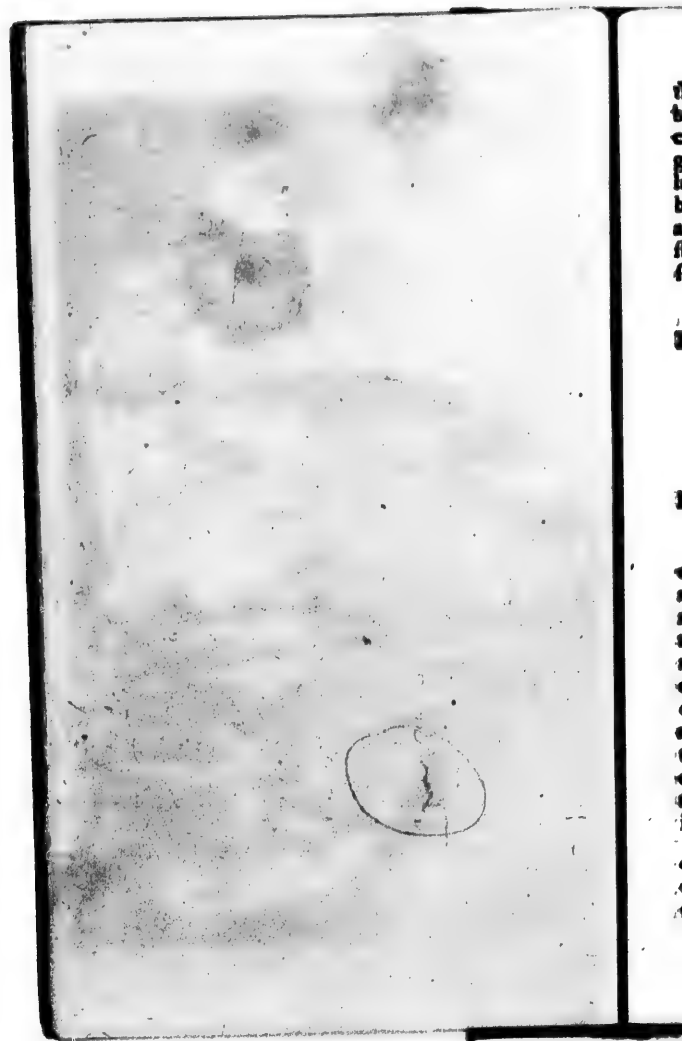
oved two miles
Muskingum to
high bank, with
is upwards of
with a fine level
banks, produc-
nderwood, and

came to inform
ere assembled a-
and were ready
h they were ear-
returned for an-
he next day in a
camp. In the
stockaded fort to
or the use of the
lighten the con-

olians were now
p, whose former
h they now de-
vide it prudent to
the strictest or-
urprise.

Colonel, with
rginia volunteers
the camp to the
And soon after
the





Against the OHIO INDIANS, 1764. 17

the troops were stationed, so as to appear to the best advantage, the Indians arrived, and were conducted to the bower. Being seated, they began, in a short time, to smoke their pipe or calumet, agreeable to their custom. This ceremony being over, their speakers laid down their pipes, and opened their pouches, wherein were their strings and belts of wampum. The Indians present were,

SENECAS.	DELAWARES.	SHAWANEE.
Kiyashuta, chief with 15 warriors.	Custaloga, chief of the Wolfe- tribe, Beaver, chief of the Tur- ky-tribe, with 20 warriors.	Keissinautchtha, a chief, and 6 warriors.

Kiyashuta, Turtle Heart, Custaloga and Beaver, were the speakers.

THE general substance of what they had to offer, consisted in excuses for their late treachery and misconduct, throwing the blame on the rashness of their young men and the nations living to the westward of them, suing for peace in the most abject manner, and promising severally to deliver up all their prisoners. After they had concluded, the Colonel promised to give them an answer the next day, and then dismissed them, the army returning to the camp.—The badness of the weather, however, prevented his meeting them again till the 20th, when he spoke to them in substance as follows, viz.

“ THAT their pretences to palliate their guilt
“ by throwing the blame on the western nations,
“ and the rashness of their young men, were
“ weak and frivolous, as it was in our power to
“ have

18 Col. BOUQUET's Expedition

" have protected them against all these nations,
 " if they had solicited our assistance, and that
 " it was their own duty to have chastised their
 " young men when they did wrong, and not
 " to suffer themselves to be directed by them."

He recapitulated to them many instances of
 their former perfidy—" their killing or captivat-
 ing the traders who had been sent among them
 " at their own request, and plundering their ef-
 " fects; — their attacking Fort-Pitt, which had
 " been built with their express consent; their
 " murdering four men that had been sent on a
 " public message to them, thereby violating the
 " customs held sacred among all nations, how-
 " ever barbarous; — their attacking the King's
 " troops last year in the woods, and after being
 " defeated in that attempt, falling upon our fron-
 " tiers, where they had continued to murder
 " our people to this day, &c."—

He told them how treacherously they had vio-
 lated even their late engagements with Colonel
 Bradstreet, to whom they had promised to deliver
 up their prisoners by the 10th of September last,
 and to recall all their warriors from the frontiers,
 which they had been so far from complying with,
 that the prisoners still remained in their custody,
 and some of their people were even now continu-
 ing their depredations; adding, that these things
 which, he had mentioned, were only " a small
 " part of their numberless murders and breaches
 " of faith; and that their conduct had always
 " been equally perfidious.—You have, said he,
 " promised at every former treaty, as you do
 " now, that you would deliver up all your pri-
 " soners, and have received every time, on that
 " account, considerable presents, but have never
 " complied with that or any other engagement.

" I am,

Expedition

these nations,
ance, and that
chastised their
wrong, and not
by them."

y instances of
ing or captivat-
among them
dering their ef-
fitt, which had
consent; their
been sent on a
violating the
nations, how-
ing the King's
and after being
upon our fron-
ed to murder

y they had vio-
with Colonel
mised to deliver
September last,
n the frontiers,
omplying with,
their custody,
a now continu-
at these things
only "a small
s and breaches
st had always
u have, said he,
ty, as you do
p all your pri-
y time, on that
but have never
er engagement.

"I am

Against the OHIO INDIANS, 1764. 19

"I am now to tell you, therefore, that we will
be no longer imposed upon by your promises.
This army shall not leave your country till
you have fully complied with every condition
that is to precede my treaty with you.

"I HAVE brought with me the relations of
the people you have massacred, or taken pri-
soners. They are impatient for revenge; and
it is with great difficulty that I can protect you
against their just resentment, which is only
restrained by the assurances given them, that
no peace shall ever be concluded till you have
given us full satisfaction."

"YOUR former allies, the Ottawas, Chip-
was, Wyandots, and others, have made their
peace with us. The Six Nations have joined
us against you. We now surround you, hav-
ing possession of all the waters of the Ohio,
the Mississippi, the Miamis, and the lakes.
All the French living in those parts are now
subjects to the king of Great-Britain, and dare
no longer assist you. It is therefore in our
power totally to extirpate you from being a
people—But the English are a merciful and
generous nation, averse to shed the blood, even
of their most cruel enemies; and if it was
possible that you could convince us, that you
sincerely repent of your past perfidy, and that
we could depend on your good behaviour for
the future, you might yet hope for mercy and
peace—If I find that you faithfully execute
the following preliminary conditions, I will
not treat you with the severity you deserve.

"I GIVE you twelve days from this date to
deliver into my hands at Wakatamake all the
prisoners in your possession, without any ex-
ception; Englishmen, Frenchmen, women
and

20 Col. BOUQUET's Expedition

"and children; whether adopted in your tribe,
 "married, or living amongst you under any de-
 "nomination and pretence whatsoever, together
 "with all negroes. And you are to furnish the
 "said prisoners with cloathing, provisions, and
 "horses, to carry them to Fort Pitt.

"WHEN you have fully complied with these
 "conditions, you shall then know on what terms
 "you may obtain the peace you sue for."—

THIS speech made an impression on the minds
 of the savages, which, it is hoped, will not soon
 be eradicated. The firm and determined spirit
 with which the Colonel delivered himself, their
 consciousness of the aggravated injuries they had
 done us, and the view of the same commander
 and army that had so severely chastised them at
 Bushy-Run the preceding year, now advanced in-
 to the very heart of their remote settlements, af-
 ter penetrating through wildernesses which they
 had deemed impassable by regular troops—all
 these things contributed to bend the haughty
 temper of the savages to the lowest degree of
 abasement; so that even their speeches seem to
 exhibit but few specimens of that strong and fe-
 rocious eloquence, which their inflexible spirit of
 independency has on former occasions inspired.
 And though it is not to be doubted, if an oppor-
 tunity had offered, but they would have fallen
 upon our army with their usual fierceness, yet
 when they saw the vigilance and spirit of our
 troops were such, that they could neither be at-
 tacked nor surprised with any prospect of success,
 their spirits seemed to revolt from the one ex-
 treme of insolent boldness, to the other of abject
 timidity. And happy will it be for them and for
 us, if the instances of our humanity and mercy,
 which they experienced in that critical situation,
 shall

Against the OHIO INDIANS, 1764. 21

shall make as lasting impressions on their savage dispositions, as it is believed the instances of our bravery and power have done; so that they may come to unite, with their fear of the latter, a love of the former; and have their minds gradually opened, by such examples, to the mild dictates of peace and civility.

THE reader, it is to be hoped, will readily excuse this digression, if it should be thought one. I now resume our narrative. The two Delaware chiefs, at the close of their speech on the 17th, delivered eighteen white prisoners, and eighty-three small sticks, expressing the number of other prisoners which they had in their possession, and promised to bring in as soon as possible. None of the Shawanese Kings appeared at the congress, and Keiskinutchtha their deputy declined speaking until the Colonel had answered the Delawares, and then with a dejected sullenness he promised, in behalf of his nation, that they would submit to the terms prescribed to the other tribes.

THE Colonel, however, determined to march farther into their country, knowing that the presence of his army would be the best security for the performance of their promises; and required some of each nation to attend him in his march.

KIVASHUTA addressed the several nations, before their departure, "desiring them to be strong in complying with their engagements, that they might wipe away the reproach of their former breach of faith, and convince their brothers the English that they could speak the truth; adding that he would conduct the army to the place appointed for receiving the prisoners."

MONDAY October 22d. The army attended by the Indian deputies, marched nine miles to camp

22 Col. BOUQUET'S Expedition

camp No. 14, crossing Margaret's creek about fifty feet wide.—The day following, they proceeded sixteen miles one quarter and seventy seven perches farther to camp No. 15, and halted there one day.

THURSDAY 25th. They marched six miles, one half and sixteen perches to camp No. 16, situated within a mile of the Forks of Muskingum; and this place was fixed upon instead of Wakautamike, as the most central and convenient place to receive the prisoners; for the principal Indian towns now lay round them, distant from seven to twenty miles; excepting only the lower Shawanese town situated on Scioto river, which was about eighty miles; so that from this place the army had it in their power to awe all the enemy's settlements and destroy their towns, if they should not punctually fulfil the engagements they had entered into.—Four redoubts were built here opposite to the four angles of the camp; the ground in the front was cleared, a store-house for the provisions erected, and likewise a house to receive, and treat of peace with, the Indians, when they should return. Three houses with separate apartments were also raised for the reception of the captives of the respective provinces, and proper officers appointed to take charge of them, with a matron to attend the women and children, so that with the officers mess houses, ovens, &c. this camp had the appearance of a little town in which the greatest order and regularity were observed.

On Saturday 27th. A messenger arrived from King Custaloga, informing that he was on his way with his prisoners, and also a messenger from the lower Shawanese towns of the like import. The Colonel however, having no reason to suspect the

Expedition

's creek about
ping, they pro-
nd seventy fe-
15. and halted

ched six miles,
camp No. 16.
of Muskingum;
ead of Wakau-
nvenient place;
p incipal Indian
tant from seven
y the lower Sha-
iver, which was
n this place the
e all the enemy's
e, if they should
ments they had
were built here
the camp; the
a store-house for
ife a house to re-
the Indians, when
fer with separate
the reception of
ovinces, and pro-
charge of them,
men and children,
ouses, ovens, &c.
a little town in
gularity were ob-
nger arrived from
he was on his way
essenger from the
ike import. The
reason to suspect
the

Against the OHIO INDIANS, 1764. 23

the latter nation of backwardness, sent one of
their own people, desiring them—" to be punc-
tual as to the time fixed; to provide a sufficient
quantity of provisions to subsist the prisoners;
to bring the letters wrote to him last winter by
the French commandant at Fort Charters,
which some of their people had stopped ever
since;" adding that, "as their nation had ex-
pressed some uneasiness at our not shaking
hands with them, they were to know that
the English never took their enemies by the
hand, before peace was finally concluded."

THE day following, the Shawanese messenger
returned, saying that when he had proceeded as
far as Wakautamike, the chief of that town un-
dertook to proceed with the message himself,
and desired the other to return and acquaint the
English that all his prisoners were ready, and he
was going to the lower towns to hasten theirs.

OCTOBER 28th. Peter the Caughnawaga chief,
and twenty Indians of that nation arrived from
Sanduski, with a letter from Colonel Bradstreet,
in answer to one which Colonel Bouquet had sent
to him from Fort-Pitt, by two of the Indians who
first spoke to him in favour of the Shawanese, as
hath been already mentioned. The substance of
Colonel Bradstreet's letter was "that he had set-
tled nothing with the Shawanese and Dela-
wares, nor received any prisoners from them.
—That he had acquainted all the Indian nati-
ons, as far as the Illinois, the bay, &c. with
the instructions he had received from General
Gage, respecting the peace he had lately made;
that he had been in Sanduski-lake and up the
river, as far as navigable for Indian canoes,
for near a month; but that he found it im-
possible to stay longer in these parts; absolute
necessity

24 Col. BOUQUET'S Expedition

"necessity obliging him to turn off the other way," &c.

COLONEL BRADSTREET, without doubt, did all which circumstances would permit, in his department; but his not being able to remain at Sanduski agreeable to the original plan, till matters were finally settled with the Ohio Indians, would have been an unfavourable incident, if Colonel Bouquet had not now had the chiefs of sundry tribes with him, and was so far advanced into the Indian country, that they thought it advisable to submit to the conditions imposed upon them.

THE Caughnawagas reported that the Indians on the lakes had delivered but few of their prisoners; that the Ottawas had killed a great part of theirs, and the other nations had either done the same, or else kept them.

FROM this time to November 9th, was chiefly spent in sending and receiving messages to and from the Indian towns, relative to the prisoners, who were now coming into the camp one day after another in small parties, as the different nations arrived in whose possession they had been. The Colonel kept so steadfastly to this article of having every prisoner delivered, that when the Delaware Kings, Beaver and Custaloga, had brought in all theirs except twelve, which they promised to bring in a few days, he refused to shake hands or have the least talk with them, while a single captive remained among them.

By

Expedition
off the other

without doubt,
i permit, in his
le to remain at
plan, till mat-
Ohio Indians,
incident, if Co-
the chiefs of
so far advanced
y thought it ad-
s imposed upon

that the Indians
w of their priso-
d a great part of
either done the

th, was chiefly
ages to aid from
prisoners, who
one day after a-
different nations
had been. The
article of having
on the Delaware
ad brought in all
ey promised to
shake hands or
like a single cap-

By

Against the OHIO INDIANS, 1764. 25

By the 9th of November, most of the prisoners were arrived that could be expected this season, amounting to 206 * in the whole; besides about 100 more in possession of the Shawanese, which they promised to deliver the following spring. Mr. Smallman, formerly a major in the Pennsylvania troops, who had been taken last summer near Detroit by the Wyandots, and delivered to the Shawanese, was among the number of those whom they now brought in, and informed the Colonel that the reason of their not bringing the remainder of their prisoners, was that many of their principal men, to whom they belonged, were gone to trade with the French, and would not return for six weeks; but that every one of their nation who were at home, had either brought or sent theirs. He further said that, on the army's first coming into the country, it had been reported among the Shawanese that our intention was to destroy them all, on which they had resolved to kill their prisoners and fight us; that a French trader who was with them, and had many barrels of powder and ball, made them a present of the whole, as soon as they had come to this resolution; but that, happily for the poor captives, just as the Shawanese were preparing to execute this tragedy, they received the Colonel's message, informing them that his intentions were only to receive the prisoners and to make peace with them on the same terms he should give to the Delawares.

* Virginians . . .	Males,	32
	Females and Children,	58
Pennsylvanians,	Males,	49
	Females and Children,	67
		—
	In all	206
		On

26 Col. BOUQUET's Expedition

On this intelligence they suspended their cruel purpose, and began to collect as many of the prisoners as they had power to deliver; but hearing immediately afterwards that one of our soldiers had been killed near the camp at Muskingham, and that some of their nation were suspected as guilty of the murder, they again imagined they would fall under our resentment, and therefore determined once more to stand out against us. For which purpose, after having brought their prisoners as far as Wakautamike, where they heard this news, they collected them all into a field, and were going to kill them, when a second express providentially arrived from Colonel Bouquet, who assured them that their nation was not even suspected of having any concern in the aforesaid murder; upon which they proceeded to the camp to deliver up the captives, who had thus twice so narrowly escaped becoming the victims of their barbarity.

On Friday, November 9th, the Colonel, attended by most of the principal officers, went to the conference-house. The Senecas and Delawares were first treated with. Kiyashuta and ten warriors represented the former. Custaloga and twenty warriors the latter.

KIYASHUTA spoke—“ With this string of
“ wampum, we wipe the tears from your eyes
“ —we deliver you these three prisoners, which
“ are the last of your flesh and blood that remain-
“ ed among the Senecas and Custaloga's tribe of
“ Delawares, we gather together and bury with
“ this belt † all the bones of the people that have
“ been killed during this unhappy war, which

† A belt or string is always delivered when thus mentioned.

“ the

Expedition

ended their cruel
many of the pri-
er; but hearing
of our soldiers
at Muskingham,
were suspected as
imagined they
and therefore
out against us.
brought their
se, where they
them all into a
when a second
Colonel Bou-
r nation was not
ern in the afore-
rucceded to the
e, who had thus
ing the victims

the Colonel, at-
officers, went to
necas and Dela-
Kiyashuta and ten
Cutlagoga and

th this string of
from your eyes
prisoners, which
ood that remain-
stuloga's tribe of
er and bury with
people that have
appy war, which

delivered when thus

"the

Against the OHIO INDIANS, 1764. 17

"the Evil Spirit occasioned among us. We co-
ver the bones that have been buried, that they
may be never more remembered—We again
cover their place with leaves that it may be no
more seen.—As we have been long astray, and
the path between you and us stopped, we ex-
tend this belt that it may be again cleared, and
we may travel in peace to see our brethren as
our ancestors formerly did. While you hold
it fast by one end, and we by the other, we
shall always be able to discover any thing that
may disturb our friendship."

"THE Colonel answered that "he had heard
them with pleasure; that he received these
three last prisoners they had to deliver, and
joined in burying the bones of those who had
fallen in the war, so that their place might be
no more known. The peace you ask for, you
shall now have. The king, my master and
your father, has appointed me only to make
war; but he has other servants who are em-
ployed in the work of peace. Sir William
Johnson is empowered for that purpose. To
him you are to apply; but before I give you
leave to go, two things are to be settled.

"As peace cannot be finally concluded here,
you will deliver me two hostages for the Sene-
cas, and two for Cutlagoga's tribe, to remain
in our hands at Fort Pitt, as a security, that
you shall commit no further hostilities or vio-
lence against any of his majesty's subjects; and
when the peace is concluded these hostages
shall be delivered safe back to you.

2. "THE deputies you are to send to Sir
William Johnson, must be fully empowered
to treat for your tribes, and you shall engage
to abide by whatever they stipulate. In that

"treaty

28 Col. BOUQUET'S Expedition

"treaty, every thing concerning trade and other matters will be settled by Sir William, to render the peace everlasting; and the deputies you are to send to him, as well as the hostages to be delivered to me, are to be named and presented to me for my approbation."—

THE Colonel, after promising to deliver back two of their people, Capt. Pipe, and Capt. John, whom he had detained at Fort Pitt, took the chiefs by the hand for the first time, which gave them great joy.

THE next conference was on November 10th, with the Turkey and Turtle tribes of Delawares, King Beaver their chief and thirty warriors representing the former; and Kelappama brother to their chief, with twenty-five warriors the latter. The Senecas and Custaloga's tribe of Delawares were also present. Their speech and the answer given, were much the same as above; excepting that the Colonel insisted on their delivering up an Englishman, who had murdered one of our people on the frontiers and brought the scalp to them; and they should appoint the same number of deputies and deliver the same number of hostages, for each of their tribes, as had been stipulated for Custaloga's tribe.

NOVEMBER 11. King Beaver presented six hostages to remain with Col. Bouquet, and five deputies to treat with Sir William Johnson, who were approved of. This day he acquainted the chiefs present that as he had great reason to be dissatisfied with the conduct of Nettowhatways, the chief of the Turtle tribe who had not appeared, he therefore deposed him; and that tribe were to

* The Chief of the Turtle tribe, for some reason, chose to absent himself.

chuse

expedition

rade and other
William, to ren-
the deputies
as the hostages
be named and
tion."

o deliver back
d Capt. John,
took the chiefs
which gave them

November 10th,
of Delawares,
warriors repre-
brother to their
the latter. The
Delawares were
e answer given,
cepting that the
up an English-
ur people on the
hem; and they
of deputies and
ages, for each
ated for Custalo-

r presented six
ouquet, and five
Johnson, who
acquainted the
reason to be dis-
owhat ways, the
d not appeared,
that tribe were to

for some reason,

chuse

Against the OHIO INDIANS, 1764. 29

chuse and present another for his approbation. This they did a few days afterwards—Smile not, reader, at this transaction; for though it may not be attended with so many splendid and flattering circumstances to a commander, as the deposing an East Indian Nabob or chief; yet to penetrate into the wildernesses where those stern West Indian Chieftains hold their sway, and to brow beat them from their throne, though but composed of the unhewn log, will be found to require both resolution and firmness; and their submitting to it, clearly shews to what degree of humiliation they were reduced.

BUT to proceed. The Shawanese still remained to be treated with, and though this nation saw themselves under the necessity of yielding to the same conditions with the other tribes, yet there had appeared a dilatoriness and sullen haughtiness in all their conduct, which rendered it very suspicious.

THE 12th of November was appointed for the conference with them; which was managed on their part by Keissinautchtha and Nimwha their chiefs, with the Red Hawke, Lavissino, Ben-sivason, Ewasunwes, Keigleishque, and forty warriors; the Caughnawaga, Seneca and Delaware chiefs, with about sixty warriors, being also present.

THE Red Hawke was their speaker, and as he delivered himself with a strange mixture of fierce pride, and humble submission, I shall add a passage, or two from his speech.

"You will listen to us your younger brothers; and as we discover something in your eyes that looks dissatisfaction with us, we now
C wipe

30 Col. BOUQUET's Expedition

" wipe away every thing bad between us that
 " you may clearly see—You have heard many
 " bad stories of us—We clean your ears that you
 " may hear—We remove every thing bad from
 " your heart, that it may be like the heart of
 " your ancestors, when they thought of nothing
 " but good." [Here he gave a string.]

" BROTHER; when we saw you coming this
 " road, you advanced towards us with a toma-
 " hawk in your hand; but we your younger bro-
 " thers take it out of your hands and throw it up
 " to God † to dispose of as he pleases; by which
 " means we hope never to see it more. And
 " now, brother, we beg leave that you who are
 " a warrior, will take hold of this chain (giving
 " a string) of friendship, and receive it from us,
 " who are also warriors, and let us think no
 " more of war, in pity to our old men, wo-
 " men and children."—Intimating, by this last
 " expression, that it was mere compassion to them,
 " and not inability to fight, that made their nation
 " desire peace.

He then produced a treaty held with the go-
 " vernment of Pennsylvania 1701, and three messa-
 " ges or letters from that government of different
 " dates; and concluded thus—

" Now, Brother, I beg We who are war-
 " riors may forget our disputes, and renew the
 " friendship which appears by these papers to

† Their usual figure for making peace is burying
 the hatchet; but as such hatchets may be dug up
 again, perhaps he thought this new expression of
 " sending it up to God, or the Good Spirit," a much
 stronger emblem of the permanency and steadfastness
 of the peace now to be made.

" have

Expedition

between us that have heard many your ears that you y thing had from like the heart of thought of nothing a string.]

W you coming this s us with a toma- your younger bro- de and throw it up please, by which ce it more. And a that you who are f this chain (giving receive it from us, d let us think no our old men, wo- mating, by this last compassion to them, made their nation

y held with the go- and three mella- rumpent of different

W who are war- utes, and renew the by these papers to

alting peace is burying chets may be dug up his new expression of Good Spirit, a touch nency and steadfast

have

Against the OHIO INDIANS, 1764. 31

"have subsisted between our fathers."—He promised, in behalf of the rest of their nation, who were gone to a great distance to hunt, and could not have notice to attend the treaty, that they should certainly come to Fort Pitt in the spring, and bring the remainder of the prisoners with them.

As the season was far advanced, and the Colonel could not stay long in these remote parts, he was obliged to rest satisfied with the prisoners the Shawanese had brought, taking hostages, and laying them under the strongest obligations, for the delivery of the rest; knowing that no other effectual method could at present be pursued.

He expostulated with them on account of their past conduct, and told them—"that the speech they had delivered would have been agreeable to him, if their actions had corresponded with their words. You have spoken, said he, much of peace, but have neglected to comply with the only condition, upon which you can obtain it. Keissinawatcha, one of your chiefs, met me a month ago at Tuscarawas, and accepted the same terms of peace for your nation, that were prescribed to the Senecas and Delawares; promising in ten days from that time to meet me here with all your prisoners.—After waiting for you till now, you are come at last, only with a part of them, and propose putting off the delivery of the rest till the spring.—What right have you to expect different terms from those granted to the Delawares, &c. who have given me entire satisfaction by their ready submission to every thing required of them?—But I will cut this matter short with you; and before I explain myself further,

C 2

"I insist

31 Col. BOUQUET's Expedition

I insist on your immediate answer to the following questions—

1st. "Will you forthwith collect and deliver up all the prisoners yet in your possession, and the French living among you, with all the Negroes you have taken from us in this or any other war; and that without any exception or evasion whatsoever?"

2d. "Will you deliver six hostages into my hands as a security for your punctual performance of the above article, and that your nations shall commit no farther hostilities against the persons or property of his majesty's subjects?"

BENEVISSICO replied that they agreed to give the hostages required, and said that he himself would immediately return to their lower towns and collect all our flesh and blood that remained among them, and that we should see them at Fort-Pitt † as soon as possible.

That, as to the French, they had no power over them. They were subjects to the king of England. We might do with them what we pleased; though he believed they were all returned before this time to their own country.

THEY then delivered their hostages, and the Colonel told them that though he had brought a Tomahawk in his hand, yet as they had now submitted, he would not let it fall on their heads, but let it drop to the ground, no more to be seen. He exhorted them to exercise kindness to the captives, and look upon them

† It will appear, by the postscript to this account, that the Shawanese have fulfilled this engagement.

now

Expedition

answer to the fol-
 collect and deliver
 ur possession, and
 ou, with all the
 n us in this or any
 any exception or

hostages into my
 punctual perfor-
 and that your nati-
 hostilities against
 his majesty's sub-

they agreed to
 and said that he
 return to their
 ur flesh and blood
 and that we should
 soon as possible.—
 they had no power
 objects to the king
 o with them what
 believed they were
 to their own coun-

hostages, and the
 ough he had brought
 ret as they had now
 let it fall on their
 e ground, no more
 them to exercise
 and look upon them

script to this account,
 this engagement.

“ now

Against the OHIO INDIANS, 1761. 33

“ now as brothers and no longer prisoners; add-
 ing, that he intended to send some of their re-
 lations along with the Indians, to see their
 friends collected and brought to Fort-Pitt. He
 promised to give them letters to Sir William
 Johnson, to facilitate a final peace, and desired
 them to be strong in performing every thing
 stipulated.”

The Caughnawagas, the Delawares and Se-
 neecas, severally addressed the Shawanese, as grand-
 children and nephews, “ to perform their pro-
 mises, and to be strong in doing good, that
 this peace might be everlasting.”—

And here I am to enter on a scene, reserved
 on purpose for this place, that the thread of the
 foregoing narrative might not be interrupted—
 a scene, which language indeed can but weakly
 describe; and to which the Poet or Painter might
 have repaired to enrich their highest colours of
 the variety of human passions; the Philosopher to
 find ample subject for his most serious reflections;
 and the Man to exercise all the tender and sym-
 pathetic feelings of the soul.

This scene I mean, was the arrival of the pri-
 soners in the camp; where were to be seen fa-
 thers and mothers recognizing and clasping their
 once-lost babes; husbands hanging round the
 necks of their newly-recovered wives; sisters and
 brothers unexpectedly meeting together after long
 separation, scarce able to speak the same language,
 or, for some time, to be sure that they were
 children of the same parents! In all these inter-
 views, joy and rapture inexpressible were seen,
 while feelings of a very different nature were
 painted in the looks of others;—flying from place
 to place in eager enquiries after relatives not
 found!

34 Col. BOUQUET'S Expedition

found! trembling to receive an answer to their questions! distracted with doubts, hopes and fears, on obtaining no account of those they sought for! or stiffened into living monuments of horror and woe, on learning their unhappy fate!

THE Indians too, as if wholly forgetting their usual savageness, bore a capital part in heightening this most affecting scene. They delivered up their beloved captives with the utmost reluctance; shed torrents of tears over them, recommending them to the care and protection of the commanding officer. Their regard to them continued all the time they remained in camp. They visited them from day to day; and brought them what corn, skins, horses and other matters, they had bestowed on them, while in their families; accompanied with other presents, and all the marks of the most sincere and tender affection. Nay, they did not stop here, but, when the army marched, some of the Indians solicited and obtained leave to accompany their former captives all the way to Fort-Pitt, and employed themselves in hunting and bringing provisions for them on the road. A young Mingo carried this still further, and gave an instance of love which would make a figure even in romance. A young woman of Virginia was among the captives, to whom he had formed so strong an attachment, as to call her his wife. Against all remonstrances of the imminent danger to which he exposed himself by approaching to the frontiers, he persisted in following her, at the risk of being killed by the surviving relations of many unfortunate persons, who had been captivated or scalped by those of his nation.

THOSE

Expedition

answer to their hopes and fears, they fought for its of horror and fate!

forgetting their part in heighten- they delivered up almost reluctance; recommending of the command- man continued all p. They visited fought them what matters, they had their families; ac- and all the marks affection. Nay, when the army icited and obtain- her captives all the and themselves in for them on the this still further, ich would make young woman of es, to whom he ent, as to call her ances of the im- xposed himself by persisted in fol- killed by the un- fortunate persons, alped by those of

THOSE

Against the OHIO INDIANS, 1764. 35

THOSE qualities in savages challenge our just esteem. They should make us charitably consider their barbarities as the effects of wrong education, and false notions of bravery and heroism; while we should look on their virtues as sure marks that nature has made them fit subjects of cultivation as well as us; and that we are called by our superior advantages to yield them all the help we can in this way. Cruel and unmerciful as they are, by habit and long example, in war, yet whenever they come to give way to the native dictates of humanity, they exercise virtues which Christians need not blush to imitate. When they once determine to give life, they give every thing with it, which, in their apprehension, belongs to it. From every enquiry that has been made, it appears—that no woman thus saved is preserved from base motives, or need fear the violation of her honour. No child is otherwise treated by the persons adopting it than the children of their own body. The perpetual slavery of those captivated in war, is a notion which even their barbarity has not yet suggested to them. Every captive whom their affection, their caprice, or whatever else, leads them to save, is soon incorporated with them, and fares alike with themselves.

THESE instances of Indian tenderness and humanity were thought worthy of particular notice. The like instances among our own people will not seem strange; and therefore I shall only mention one, out of a multitude that might be given on this occasion.

AMONG the captives, a woman was brought into the camp at Muskingum, with a babe about three months old at her breast. One of the Virginia-

C 4

ginia-volunteers soon knew her to be his wife, who had been taken by the Indians about six months before. She was immediately delivered to her over-joyed husband. He flew with her to his tent, and clothed her and his child in proper apparel. But their joy, after the first transports, was soon damped by the reflection that another dear child of about two years old, captivated with the mother, and separated from her, was still missing, altho' many children had been brought in.

A few days afterwards, a number of other prisoners were brought to the camp, among whom were several more children. The woman was sent for, and one, supposed to be hers, was produced to her. At first sight she was uncertain, but viewing the child with great earnestness, she soon recollected its features, and was so overcome with joy, that literally forgetting her sucking child she dropt it from her arms, and catching up the new found child in an ecstasy, pressed it to her breast, and bursting into tears carried it off, unable to speak for joy. The father seized up the babe she had let fall, followed her in no less transport and affection.

Among the children who had been carried off young, and had long lived with the Indians, it is not to be expected that any marks of joy would appear on being restored to their parents or relatives. Having been accustomed to look upon the Indians as the only connexions they had, having been tenderly treated by them, and speaking their language, it is no wonder that they considered their new state in the light of a captivity, and parted from the savages with tears.

But

Against the OHIO INDIANS, 1764. 37

BUT it must not be denied that there were even some grown persons who shewed an unwillingness to return. The Shawanese were obliged to bind several of their prisoners and force them along to the camp; and some women, who had been delivered up, afterwards found means to escape and run back to the Indian towns. Some, who could not make their escape, clung to their savage acquaintance at parting, and continued many days in bitter lamentations, even refusing sustenance.

For the honour of humanity, we would suppose those persons to have been of the lowest rank, either bred up in ignorance and distressing penury, or who had lived so long with the Indians as to forget all their former connections. For, easy and unconstrained as the savage life is; certainly it could never be put in competition with the blessings of improved life and the light of religion, by any persons who have had the happiness of enjoying, and the capacity of discerning, them.

EVERY thing being now settled with the Indians, the army decamped on Sunday 18th November, and marched for Fort Pitt, where it arrived on the 28th. The regular troops were immediately sent to garrison the different posts on the communication, and the provincial troops, with the captives, to their several provinces. Here ended this expedition, in which it is remarkable that, notwithstanding the many difficulties attending it, the troops were never in want of any necessaries, continuing perfectly healthy during the whole campaign, in which no life was lost, except the man mentioned to have been killed at Muskingum.

In the beginning of January 1765, Colonel Bouquet arrived at Philadelphia, receiving where-

38 Col. BOUQUET's Expedition

ever he came, every possible mark of gratitude and esteem from the people in general; and particularly from the overjoyed relations of the captives, whom he had so happily, and without bloodshed, restored to their country and friends. Nor was the legislative part of the province less sensible of his important services. The assembly of Pennsylvania, at their first sitting, unanimously voted him the following address.

In ASSEMBLY, January 15, 1765, A. M.

To the Honourable HENRY BOUQUET, Esq;

Commander in Chief of His MAJESTY's Forces in the Southern Department of AMERICA,

The Address of the Representatives of the Freemen of the Province of Pennsylvania, in General Assembly met.

SIR,

THE representatives of the freemen of the province of Pennsylvania, in general assembly met, being informed that you intend shortly to embark for England, and moved with a due sense of the important services you have rendered to his majesty, his northern colonies in general, and to this province in particular, during our late wars with the French and barbarous Indians, in the remarkable victory over the savage enemy, united to oppose you, near Bushy-Run, in August 1763, when on your march for the relief of Pittsburgh, owing, under God, to your intrepidity and superior skill in command, together with the bravery of your officers

expedition
work of gratitude
general; and per-
sons of the cap-
tivity, and without
any and friends,
the provinces left
The assembly
g, unanimously

1765, A. M.
DUQUET, Esq;
JESTY's For-
of AMERICA,
ves of the Free-
sylvania, in Ge-

the freemen of the
a, in general af-
that you intend
and moved with
services you have
northern colonies
to particular,
French and bar-
table, victory over
oppose you, near
when on your
ough, owing, un-
and superior skill
a heavy of your
officers

Against the OHIO INDIANS 1764. 39

officers and little army; as also in your late
march to the country of the savage nations,
with the troops under your direction; thereby
striking terror through the numerous Indian
tribes around you; laying a foundation for a
lasting as well as honourable peace with them;
and rescuing, from savage captivity, upwards
of two hundred of our christian brethren, pri-
soners among them: these eminent services,
and your constant attention to the civil rights
of his majesty's subjects in this province, de-
mand, Sir, the grateful tribute of thanks from
all good men; and therefore we, the represen-
tatives of the freemen of Pennsylvania, unani-
mously for ourselves, and in behalf of all the
people of this province, do return you our most
sincere and hearty thanks for these your great
services, wishing you a safe and pleasant voy-
age to England, with a kind and gracious re-
ception from his majesty.

Signed, by order of the House,

JOSEPH FOX, SPEAKER.

The

The Colonel's Answer was as follows, viz.

To the honourable the REPRESENTATIVES of
the FREEMEN of the province of Pennsylvania,
in General Assembly met,

GENTLEMEN,

WITH a heart impressed with the most
lively sense of gratitude, I return you
my humble and sincere thanks, for the honour
you have done me in your polite address of the
15th of January, transmitted me to New-York
by your speaker.

NEXT to the approbation of His Sacred Ma-
jesty, and my superior officers, nothing could
afford me higher pleasure than your favourable
opinion of my conduct, in the discharge of those
military commands with which I have been in-
trusted.

GRATITUDE as well as justice demand of
me to acknowledge, that the aids granted by
the legislature of this province, and the con-
stant assistance and support afforded me by the
honourable the Governor and Commissioners in
the late expedition, have enabled me to recover
so many of his Majesty's subjects from a cruel
captivity, and be the happy instrument of re-
storing them to freedom and liberty: To you
therefore, gentlemen, is the greater share of that
merit due, which you are generously pleased
on this occasion to impute to my services.

Yours

Expedition

follows, viz.

REPRESENTATIVES OF
of Pennsylvania,

and with the most
de, I return you
for the honour
the address of the
to New-York

His Sacred Ma-
jesty, nothing could
your favourable
discharge of those
I have been in-

difficult demand of
aid granted by
me, and the con-
firmed me by the
Commissioners in
ed me to recover
from a cruel
instrument of re-
liberty: To you
ever share of that
generously pleased
my services.

Yours

Against the OHIO INDIANS, 1764. 41

• YOUR kind testimony of my constant atten-
• tion to the civil rights of his majesty's subjects
• in this Province, does me singular honour, and
• calls for the return of my warmest acknowledg-
• ments.

• PERMIT me to take this public opportunity
• of doing justice to the officers of the regular and
• provincial troops, and the volunteers, who have
• served with me, by declaring that, under Di-
• vine Providence, the repeated successes of his
• Majesty's arms against a savage enemy, are prin-
• cipally to be ascribed to their courage and reso-
• lution, and to their perseverance under the se-
• verest hardships and fatigue.

• I SINCERELY wish prosperity and happiness
• to the province, and have the honour to be,
• with the greatest respect, Gentlemen,

• Your most obedient, and most humble servant,

• HENRY BOUQUET.

February 4, 1765.

Soon afterwards the Colonel received a very
polite and affectionate letter from Governor Fau-
quier, dated 29th of December, inclosing resolves
of the honourable members of his Majesty's Coun-
cil, and of the house of Burgesses, for the colony
and dominion of Virginia.

THOS

42 Col. BOUQUET'S Expedition

THOSE respectable bodies unanimously returned their thanks to him for the activity, spirit and zeal, with which he had reduced the Indians to terms of peace, and compelled those savages to deliver up so many of his Majesty's subjects whom they had in captivity. They further requested the Governor to recommend him to his Majesty's ministers, as an officer of distinguished merit, in this and every former service in which he had been engaged.

THE Colonel, in his answer, acknowledged the ready assistance and countenance which he had always received from the Governor and colony of Virginia in carrying on the King's service; and mentioned his particular obligations to Col. LEWIS, for his zeal and good conduct during the campaign.

THE honours thus bestowed on him, his own modesty made him desirous of transferring to the officers and army under his command; and indeed the mutual confidence and harmony subsisting between him and them, highly redound to the reputation of both. He has taken every occasion of doing justice to the particular merit of Colonel REID who was second in command; and also to all the officers who served in the expedition, regulars as well as provincials †.

THE reader will observe that the public bodies who presented these addresses to the Colonel, not only wished to express their own gratitude, but likewise to be instrumental in recommending him to the advancement his services merited. And

† The Pennsylvania troops were commanded by Lieutenant Colonel Francis, and Lieutenant Colonel Clayton.

surely

pedition

ously return-
ty, spirit and
e Indians to
se savages to
jects whom
er requested
his Majesty's
ed merit, in
which he had

acknowledged
which he had
and colony
service; and
to Col. Lx-
Q during the

him, his own
ferring to the
; and indeed
my subsisting
edound to the
very occasion
rit of Colonel
; and also to
pedition, re-

public bodies
Colonel, not
gratitude, but
urriending him
erited. And
to him, who
commanded by
utenant Colonel

surely

Against the OHIO INDIANS, 1764. 43

surely it is a happy circumstance to obtain promo-
tion, not only unenvied, but even with the gene-
ral approbation and good wishes of the public. It
ought, however, to be mentioned, that on the
first account his Majesty received of this expediti-
on, and long before those testimonies could reach
England, he was graciously pleased of his own
royal goodness and as a reward of the Colonel's
merit, to promote him to the rank of BRIGADI-
ER GENERAL, and to the command of the sou-
thern district of America. And as he is rendered
as dear, by his private virtues, to those who have
the honour of his more intimate acquaintance, as
he is by his military services to the public, it is
hoped he may long continue among us; where
his experienced abilities will enable him, and his
love of the English constitution entitle him, to
fill any future trust to which his Majesty may be
pleased to call him.

P O S T.

POSTSCRIPT.

IT was mentioned in the 31st page of this account, that the Shawanese brought only a part of their prisoners with them to Col. Bouquet at Mifkingam, in November last; and that, as the season was far advanced, he was obliged to rest satisfied with taking hostages for the delivery of the remainder at Fort-Pitt, in the ensuing spring.

THE escape of those hostages soon-afterwards, as well as the former equivocal conduct of their nation, had given reason to doubt the sincerity of their intentions with respect to the performance of their promises. But we have the satisfaction to find that they actually have fulfilled them. Ten of their chiefs, and about fifty of their warriors, attended with many of their women and children, met GEORGE CROGHAN, Esq; deputy agent to Sir WILLIAM JOHNSON, at Fort-Pitt, the 9th of last May; together with a large body of Delawares, Senecas, Sandusky and Munby Indians; where they delivered the remainder of their prisoners, brightened the chain of friendship, and gave every assurance of their firm intentions to preserve the peace inviolable for ever.

THERE

POSTSCRIPT. 45

THERE is something remarkable in the appellation they gave to the English on this occasion; calling them Fathers instead of Brethren.

LAWAUGHQUA, the Shawanese speaker, delivered himself in the following terms.—

"FATHERS, for so we will call you henceforward; listen to what we are going to say to you.

"It gave us great pleasure yesterday to be called the children of the great King of England; and convinces us your intentions towards us are upright, as we know a Father will be tender of his children, and they are more ready to obey him than a Brother. Therefore we hope our Father will now take better care of his children, than has heretofore been done.—

"You put us in mind of our promise to Col. Bouquet, which was to bring your flesh and blood to be delivered at this place. FATHER, you have not spoke in vain—you see we have brought them with us,—except a few that were out with our hunting parties, which will be brought here as soon as they return.

"THEY have been all united to us by adoption; and altho' we now deliver them up to you, we will always look upon them as our relations, whenever the Great Spirit is pleased that we may visit them.

"FATHER, We have taken as much care of them, as if they were our own flesh and blood. They are now become unacquainted with your customs and manners; and therefore, we request you will use them tenderly and kindly, which will induce them to live contentedly with you.

" HERE

PT.

page of this brought only them to Col. ber last; and d, he was ob- stacles for the itt, in the en-

on-afterwards, duct of their he sincerity of e performance the satisfaction fulfilled them. of their war- women and N, Esq; depu- son, at Fort- er with a large ky and Munfy remainder of n of friendship, firm intentions ever.

THERE

" HERE is a belt with the figure of our Father the King of Great-Britain at one end, and the Chief of our nation at the other. It represents them holding the chain of friendship; and we hope neither side will slip their hands from it, so long as the Sun and Moon give light."

THE reader will further remember that one of the engagements which the different Indian Tribes entered into with Colonel Bouquet, was to send deputies to conclude a peace with Sir WILLIAM JOHNSON. This has also been punctually fulfilled; and we are assured that Sir WILLIAM "has finished his congress greatly to his satisfaction, and even, beyond his expectations." Thus every good consequence has ensued from this important expedition, which our fondest wishes could have induced us to expect from the known valour and spirit of the able commander who had the conduct of it; and we now have the pleasure once more to behold the temple of JANUS shut, in this western world!

REFLEC-

T.

re of our Fa-
one end, and
ner. It repre-
friendship; and
air hands from
give light."
er that one of
Indian Tribes
was to send
Sir WILLIAM
ually fulfill-
WILLIAM " has
is satisfaction,
m." Thus e-
from this im-
ft wishes could
known valour
who had the
e pleasure once
anus shut, in

REFLEC-



REFLECTIONS

ON THE

WAR WITH THE SAVAGES

OF

NORTH-AMERICA.

THE long continued ravages of the Indians on the frontiers of the British colonies in America, and the fatal overthrows which they have sometimes given our best disciplined troops, especially in the beginning of the late war, have rendered them an object of our consideration, even in their military capacity. And as but few officers, who may be employed against them, can have opportunities to observe the true causes of their advantages over European troops. in the woods, it is with the utmost pleasure that I now proceed

48 REFLECTIONS on the WAR

proceed to lay before the public the following valuable papers, which I mentioned † to have been communicated to me by an officer of great abilities and long experience, in our wars with the Indians.

As scarce any thing has yet been published on a subject now become of the highest importance § to our colonies, these papers will undoubtedly be an acceptable present to the reader, and the remarks contained in them may be more and more improved by the future care and attention of able men, till perhaps a complete system is at length formed for the conduct of this particular species of war.

SECTION I.

OF THE TEMPER AND GENIUS OF THE INDIANS.

THE love of liberty is innate, in the savage, and seems the ruling passion of the state of nature. His desires and wants, being few, are easily gratified, and leave him much time to spare, which he would spend in idleness, if hunger did not force him to hunt. That exercise makes him strong, active and bold, raises his courage, and fits him for war, in which he uses the same stratagema and cruelty as against the wild beasts; making

† See the introduction.

§ It will appear by the account of Indian tribes and towns annexed to these papers, that the enemies we have to deal with are neither contemptible in numbers or strength.

WAR

following va-
to have been
of great abili-
ars with the

published on
st importance
undoubtedly
der, and the
ore and more
tion of able
is at length
icular species

OF THE IN-

in the savage
ate of nature.
are easily gra-
spare, which
did not force
es him strong,
, and fits him
ne stratagema
casts; making

f Indian tribes
that the enemies
contemptible in

no

With the Savages of NORTH-AMERICA. 49

no scruple to employ treachery and perfidy to van-
quish his enemy.

JEALOUS of his independency and of his pro-
perty, he will not suffer the least encroachment
on either; and upon the slightest suspicion, fired
with resentment, he becomes an implacable ene-
my, and flies to arms to vindicate his right, or
revenge an injury.

THE advantages of these savages over civilized
nations are both natural and acquired. They are
tall and well limbed, remarkable for their activi-
ty, and have a piercing eye and quick ear,
which are of great service to them in the woods.

LIEK'S beasts of prey, they are patient, and de-
ceitful, and rendered by habit almost insensible
to the common feelings of humanity. Their bar-
barous custom of scalping their enemies, in the
heat of action; the exquisite torments often in-
flicted by them on those reserved for a more de-
liberate fate; their general ferocity of manners,
and the successes wherewith they have often been
flushed, have conspired to render their name ter-
rible, and some times to strike a panic even in-
to our bravest and best disciplined troops.

THEIR acquired advantages are, that they
have been inured to bear the extremes of heat and
cold; and from their infancy, in winter and sum-
mer, to plunge themselves in cold streams, and
to go almost naked, exposed to the scorching sun
or nipping frosts, till they arrive to the state of
manhood. Some of them destroy the sensation of
the skin by scratching it with the short and sharp
teeth of some animal, disposed in the form of a
curry-comb, which makes them regardless of
brins and thorns in running thro' thickets. Ri-
vers are no obstacles to them in their wild excu-
sions.

50 REFLECTIONS on the WAR

sions. They either swim over, or cross them on rafts or canoes, of an easy and ready construction.

In their expeditions they live chiefly by hunting, or on wild fruits and roots with which the woods supply them almost every where.

They can bear hunger and thirst for several days, without slackening, on that account, their perseverance in any proposed enterprise.

By constant practice in hunting, they learn to shoot with great skill, either with bows, or firearms; and to steal unperceived upon their prey, pursuing the tracks of men and beasts, which would be imperceptible to an European. They can run for a whole day without halting, when flying from an enemy, or when sent on a message. They steer, as if by instinct, thro' trackless woods, and with astonishing patience can lie whole days motionless in ambush to surprize an enemy, esteeming no labour or perseverance too painful to obtain their ends.

They besmeer their bodies with bear's grease, which defends them against rains and damps, as well as against the stings of Muskitoes and Gnats. It likewise supplees their limbs, and makes them slippery as the ancient gladiators, who could not be held fast when seized in fight.

PLAIN food, constant exercise, and living in the open air, preserve them healthy and vigorous.

They are powerfully excited to war by the custom established among them, of paying distinguished honours to warriors.

They fight only when they think to have the advantage, but cannot be forced to it, being sure by their speed to elude the most eager pursuit.

THEIR

e W A R

cross them on
construction.
by by hunting,
rich the woods

first for several
account, their
size.

they learn to
bows, or fire-
on their prey,
beasts, which
ocean. They
haling, when
a on a message.
thro' trackless
can lie whole
rise an enemy,
too painful to

h bear's grease,
and damps, as
oes and Gnats.
d makes them
who could not

life, and living
lshy and vigo-

to war by the
f paying distin-

nk to have the
o it, being sure
gm pursuit.

THEIR

With the Savages of NORTH-AMERICA. 31

THEIR dress consists of the skins of some wild beast, or a blanket, a shirt either of linen, or of dressed skins, a breech clout, leggins, reaching half way up the thigh, and fastened to a belt, with moccasins on their feet. They use no ligatures that might obstruct the circulation of their blood, or agility of their limbs. They shave their head, reserving only a small tuft of hair on the top; and slit the outer part of the ears, to which, by weights, they give a circular form, extending it down to their shoulders.

THEY adorn themselves with ear and nose rings, bracelets of silver and wampum, and paint their faces with various colours. When they prepare for an engagement they paint themselves black, and fight naked.

THEIR arms are a fusil, or rifle, a powder horn, a shot pouch, a tomahawk, and a scalping knife hanging to their neck.

WHEN they are in want of fire-arms, they supply them by a bow, a spear, or a death hammer, which is a short club made of hard wood.

THEIR usual utensils are a kettle, a spoon, a looking glass, an awl, a steel to strike fire, some paint, a pipe and tobacco-pouch. For want of tobacco, they smoke some particular leaves, or the bark of a willow, which is almost their continual occupation.

THUS lightly equipped do the savages lie in wait to attack, at some difficult pass, the European soldiers, heavily accoutred, harrassed by a tedious march, and encumbered with an unwieldy convoy.

EXPERI-

52 REFLECTIONS on the WAR

EXPERIENCE has convinced us that it is not our interest to be at war with them; but if, after having tried all means to avoid it, they force us to it, (which in all probability will often happen) we should endeavour to fight them upon more equal terms, and regulate our manœuvres upon those of the enemy we are to engage, and the nature of the country we are to act in.

It does not appear from our accounts of Indian wars, that the savages were as brave formerly as we have found them of late; which must be imputed to their unexpected successes against our troops on some occasions, particularly in 1755; and from the little resistance they have since met with from defenceless inhabitants.

It is certain that even at this day, they seldom expose their persons to danger, and depend entirely upon their dexterity in concealing themselves during an engagement, never appearing openly, unless they have struck their enemies with terror, and have thereby rendered them incapable of defence — From whence it may be inferred that, if they were beat two or three times, they would lose that confidence inspired by success, and be less inclined to engage in wars which might end fatally for them. But this cannot reasonably be expected, till we have troops trained to fight them in their own way, with the additional advantage of European courage and discipline.

Any deviation from our established military system would be needless, if valour, zeal, order and good conduct, were sufficient to subdue this light-footed enemy. These qualities are conspicuous in our troops; but they are too heavy, and indeed too valuable, to be employed alone in a destructive service for which they were never intended.

that it is not
but if, after
they force us
often happen)
upon more
manœuvres upon
and the na-

counts of Indi-
have formerly
which must be
the against our
early in 1755
have since met

y, they seldom
depend entire-
ing themselves
earing openly,
ed with terror,
capable of de-
e inferred that,
es, they would
uccess, and be
ch might end
reasonably be
ed to fight them
onal advantage

hed military sys-
zeal, order and
bdue this light-
e conspicuous
heavy, and un-
alone in a def-
re never intend-
ed.

With the Savages of NORTH-AMERICA. 53

ed. They require the assistance of lighter corps, whose dress, arms and exercises, should be adapted to this new kind of war.

This opinion is supported by the example of many warlike nations, of which I beg leave to mention the following.

THE learned Jesuit † who has obliged the world with a treatise on the military affairs of the ancient Romans, tells us, from Sallust §, that this wise nation, our masters in the art of war, were never hindered even by the pride of empire, from imitating any foreign maxim or institution, provided it was good; and that they carefully adopted into their own practice whatever they found useful in that of their allies or enemies; so that by receiving some thing from one, and some from another, they greatly improved a system even originally excellent.

THE defeat of Antony and Crassus by the Parthians, of Curio by the Numidians, and many other instances, convinced the Romans that their legions, who had conquered so many nations, were not fit to engage light-troops, which, harassing them continually, evaded all their endeavours to bring them to a close engagement; and it is probable that if Julius Cæsar had not been assassinated, when he was preparing to march a-

† Vid. Joannis Antonii Valtrini Lib. de re milit. Vet. Rom.

§ Neque enim Romanis superbia unquam obstitit, quo minus aliena instituta, si modo proba fuissent, imitarentur; et quod ubique apud socios vel hostes idoneum videretur, cum studio domi exsequerentur. — Aliisque ab aliis accepta, ipsi longe facere meliora quam quidem digna statuerent.

54 REFLECTIONS on the WAR

gainst the same Parthians, to wipe off the reproach of the former defeat, he would have added to his legions a greater number of light troops, formed upon the principles and method of that nation, and have left us useful lessons for the conduct of a war against our savages.

THAT he did not think the attack of irregular troops contemptible, appears clearly in several parts of his commentaries, and particularly in the African war. The various embarrassments he met with from the enemy he had then to deal with, necessarily call to our mind many similar circumstances in the course of our wars with the Indians; and the pains he took to instruct his soldiers to stand and repel the skirmishes of the nimble Africans, may furnish instruction to us in our military operations against the savage Americans.

We are told that while Cæsar was on his march " to Scipio's " quarters, the enemy's horse

Labienus, Afraniusque cum omni equitatu, levisque armatura, ex insidiis adorti agmini Cæsaris attente se offerunt, atque ex collibus primis existunt. Primo impetu legionum equitatus, levis armatura hostium nullo negotio loco pulsa et dejecta, de colle. Quum jam Cæsar existimasset hostes pulsum pergere cepisset, iterum celeriter ex proximis collibus eimpunt, atque in Cæsaris legionarios impetum faciunt Numidæ, levisque armatura, mirabili velocitate præditi, qui inter equites pugnabant, et una pariterque eum equitibus accurrere et refugere consueverant. Hoc stupius facerent, ac—Cæsaris autem non amplius tres, aut quatuor milites veterani, si se convertissent, ei pila viribus contorta in Numidas infestos conjecissent, amplius duorum milium numero ad unum terga vertebant; ac rursus ad aciem passim, conversis

the WAR

ff the reproach
ve added to his
troops, formed
of that nation,
the conduct of

ack of irregular
ally in several
particularly in the
affinities he met
n to deal with,
similar circum-
with the Indians;
his soldiers to
the nimble Afri-
as in our mili-
Americans.

esar was on his
to, the enemy's
" horse

With the Savages of NORTH-AMERICA. 35

" horse and light-armed infantry, rising all at
" once from an ambuscade, appeared upon the
" hills, and attacked his rear. His legions form-
" ing themselves, soon beat the enemy from the
" higher ground. And now thinking all safe, he
" begins to pursue his march. But immediately
" the enemy break forth from the neighbouring
" hills; and the Numidians, with their light-
" armed foot, who are wonderfully nimble, al-
" ways mixing and keeping equal pace with the
" cavalry in charging or retiring, fall afresh on
" the Roman foot. Thus they frequently re-
" newed the charge, and still retired when he
" endeavoured to bring them to close engage-
" ment. If but two or three of his veterans
" faced about and cast their pikes with vigour,
" two thousand of the enemy would fly, then re-
" turning rally again, making it their business to
" harass his march, and to press upon his rear,
" following at some distance, and throwing their
" darts at the legions.

conversis equis, se colligebant, atque in spatio conse-
quebantur, et jacula in Legionarios conjiciebant.

Caesar, contra ejusmodi hostium genera copias
suas, non ut imperator exercitum veteranum, victo-
remque maximis rebus gestis, sed ut lanitta tirones
gladiatores condocere: quo pedites se recipiant
ab hoste, &c.—Mirifice enim hostium leve armaturam
anxium exercitum ejus atque sollicitum habebat:
quia et equites detinebat praelium inire, propter
equorum interitum; quod eos jaculis intehiebat;
et legionarium nullum desatigabat, propter velocita-
tem. Grevis enim armatura miles simul atque ab his
infectus constiterat, in eoque impetui secerat, ille
velocis cursu facile periculum vitabar.

D 2 44 CAESAR

mini equita. u. levi-
mini Caesaris attra-
primis existit.
is, levis armaturam
et dejectis, de-
madet hostes pulsan-
tuos, et iter comp-
lester ex proximis
satis legionarios im-
armaturam, mirabili-
lites pugnabant, et
currere et refugere
erent, &c.—Caesaris
uor milites veterani,
contorta in Numidas
rum nullum numero
sua ad aciem passim,
conversa

56 REFLECTIONS on the WAR

“CESAR, having so subtil an enemy to deal with, instructed his soldiers, not like a general who had been victorious in the most arduous exploits, but as a fencing-master † would instruct his scholars; teaching them with what pace to retreat from the enemy, and how to return to the charge; how far to advance, and how far to retire; and likewise in what place and manner to cast their pikes. For their light-armed infantry gave him the greatest uneasiness, deterring his troopers from meeting them, by killing their horses with their javelins, and wearying his legions by their swift-ness. For whenever his heavy-armed foot faced about, and endeavoured to return their charge, they quickly avoided the danger by flight.”

BUT without going back to the ancients, we have seen this maxim adopted in our days. Marshal de Saxe finding the French army harraffed by the Hussars and other Austrian-light troops, formed also several corps of them of different kinds; and the king of Prussia in his first war introduced them into his army, and has augmented and employed them ever since with success. We have ourselves made use of them in the two last wars in Europe: But the light troops wanted in America must be trained upon different principles. The enemies we have to deal with, are infinitely more active and dangerous than the Hussars and Pandours; or even the Africans above-mentioned. For the American savages, after their rapid incursions, retreat to their towns, at a great dis-

† Lanista, in Latin, is an instructor of gladiators; which in English can only be translated a Fencing-master.

enemy to deal
not like a genera
most arduous
er + would in-
tem with what
ny, and how to
to advance, and
e in what place
iles. For their
the greatest un-
rs from meeting
with their jave-
s by their swift-
avy-armed foot
to return their
the danger by
the ancients, we
our days. Mar-
army harrassed by
ght troops, form-
different kinds;
t war introduced
gmented and em-
uccess. We have
e two last wars in
anted in America
principles. The
are infinitely more
Hussars and Pan-
above-mentioned,
er their rapid in-
se, at a great dis-
ructor of gladiators
ranslated a Fencing

tance

With the Savages of NORTH-AMERICA. 57

fance from our settlements, through thickety woods almost impenetrable to our heavy and unwieldy corps, composed of soldiers loaded with cloaths, baggage and provisions, who, when fatigued by a long march, must be a very unequal match to engage the nimble savage in woods, which are his native element.

ANOTHER unavoidable incumbrance, in our expeditions, arises from the provisions and baggage of the army, for which a road must be opened, and bridges thrown over rivers and swamps. This creates great labour, retards and weakens the line of march, and keeps the troops tied to a convoy which they cannot lose sight of, without exposing it to become a prey to a vigilant enemy, continually hovering about to seize every advantage.

AN European, to be a proper judge of this kind of war, must have lived some time in the vast forests of America; otherwise he will hardly be able to conceive a continuity of woods without end. In spite of his endeavours, his imagination will betray him into an expectation of open and clear grounds; and he will be apt to calculate his manœuvres accordingly, too much upon the principles of war in Europe.

LET us suppose a person, who is entirely unacquainted with the nature of this service, to be put at the head of an expedition in America. We will further suppose that he has made the dispositions usual in Europe for a march, or to receive an enemy; and that he is then attacked by the savages. He cannot discover them, tho' from every tree, log or bush, he receives an incessant fire, and observes that few of their shot are lost. He will not hesitate to charge those invisible enemies, but he will charge in vain. For they are

58 REFLECTIONS on the WAR

as cautious to avoid a close engagement, as indefatigable in harassing his troops; and notwithstanding all his endeavours, he will still find himself surrounded by a circle of fire, which, like an artificial horizon, follows him every where.

UNABLE to rid himself of an enemy who never stands his attacks, and flies when pressed, only to return upon him again with equal agility and vigour; he will see the courage of his heavy troops droop, and their strength at last fail them by repeated and ineffectual efforts.

He must therefore think of a retreat, unless he can force his way thro' the enemy. But how is this to be effected? his baggage and provisions are unloaded and scattered, part of his horses and drivers killed, others dispersed by fear, and his wounded to be carried by soldiers already fainting under the fatigue of a long action. The enemy, encouraged by his distress, will not fail to increase the disorder, by pressing upon him on every side, with redoubled fury and savage howlings.

He will probably form a circle or a square, to keep off so daring an enemy, ready at the least opening to fall upon him with the destructive tomahawk: but these dispositions, tho' a tolerable shift for defence, are neither proper for an attack, nor a march thro' the woods:—

THIS is not an imaginary supposition, but the true state of an engagement with the Indians, experienced by the troops who have fought against them. Neither is there any thing new or extraordinary in this way of fighting, which seems to have been common to most Barbarians †.

† Vkl. Caf. Comm. lib. V. de bello Gallico, et lib. II. de bello civili.

in the WAR

engagement, as in-
ps; and notwith-
will still find him-
fire, which, like
every where.
enemy who ne-
when pressed, on-
equal agility and
ge of his heavy
at last fail them

retreat, unless
my. But how
ge and provis-
of his horses
by fear, and his
rs already fainting
on. The enemy,
ll not fail to en-
upon him on e-
y and savage how-

le or a square, to
ready at the least
the destructive to-
tho' a tolerable
oper for an attack,

opposition, but the
h the Indians, ex-
have fought against
ning new or extra-
g, which seems to
barbarians †.

de bello Gallico, et

WHAT

With the Savages of NORTH-AMERICA. 57

WHAT is then to be done to extricate our
little army from impending destruction?

THIS is a problem which I do not pretend to
resolve. But as every man would, in similar cir-
cumstances, determine himself some way or other,
I will propose my own sentiments, founded upon
some observations which I believe invariable in
all engagements with savages.

THE first, that their general maxim is to sur-
round their enemy.

THE second, that they fight scattered, and
never in a compact body.

THE third, that they never stand their ground
when attacked, but immediately give way, to
return to the charge.

THESE principles being admitted, it follows—

1st. THAT the troops destined to engage In-
dians, must be lightly clothed, armed, and ac-
counted.

2^d. THAT having no resistance to encounter
in the attack or defence, they are not to be drawn
up in close order, which would only expose them
without necessity to a greater loss.

AND, lastly, that all their evolutions must be
performed with great rapidity; and the men en-
abled by exercise to pursue the enemy closely,
when put to flight, and not give them time to
rally.

THESE remarks will explain the reasons of the
alterations proposed in the formation of a corps of
troops, for the service of the woods. It is not,
however, to be expected that this method will re-
move all obstacles, or that those light troops can
equal the savages in patience, and activity; but,
with discipline and practice, they may in a great
measure

60 REFLECTIONS on the WAR

measure supply the want of these advantages, and by keeping the enemy at a distance afford great relief and security to the main body.

SECTION II.

GENERAL IDEA OF AN ESTABLISHMENT OF LIGHT TROOPS, FOR THE SERVICE OF THE WOODS.

I SHALL only venture a few notions suggested by experience upon this subject, chiefly with a view to recommend it to the consideration of persons capable of proposing a proper method of forming such an establishment: and, in order to be better understood, I will suppose a corps of 500 men to be raised and disciplined for the woods, besides two troops of light horse, to which a company of artificers might be added. The fittest men for that service would be the natives of America bred upon the frontiers, and enlisted between the age of 15 and 20 years, to be discharged between 30 and 35.

CLOATHING.

THE cloathing of a soldier for the campaign might consist of a short coat of brown cloth, lapelled, and without plaits; a strong tanned shirt, short trowsers, leggins, moccasins or shoe packs, a sailor's hat, a blanket, a knapsack for provisions, and an oiled furtout † against the rain. To this

† The following Watch-coat was contrived by an officer, whose name I do not remember. But instead of

the WAR
advantages, and
since afford great
ody.

II.

ESTABLISHMENT OF
SERVICE OF

motions suggested
chiefly with a
sideration of per-
proper method of
and, in order to
propose a corps of
ed for the woods,
to which a com-
ded. The fittest
e natives of Ame-
inlited between
be discharged be-

III.

for the campaign
brown cloth, lap-
strong tanned shirt,
ons or shoe packs,
pack for provisi-
nst the rain. To
this
was contrived by an
member. But instead
of

With the Savages of NORTH-AMERICA. 61
this might be added, in winter quarters or times
of peace, three white shirts and stocks, with a
flannel waistcoat.

D 5 A R M S.

of the oiled linen to be put under the hat, a cap
might perhaps answer better. He writes as follows,
viz.

" As the Indian war will require frequent incur-
sions into a wild country, where a man sick or
wounded, is in several respects more detrimental
to the service than a man killed, every thing that
may contribute to the health of the men is of mo-
ment.

" In this view, I propose a sort of furtout, to pre-
serve men, in a great measure, both from wet and
cold.

" Take a large checked shirt, of about half a
crown sterling per yard, for it should be pretty
fine; cut off the wrist-bands, and continue the
opening of the breast down to the bottom; sew up
the sides from the gussets downwards; rip out the
gathers in the fore parts of the collar as far as the
shoulder straps, and resew it plain to the collar.

" The shirt will then become a sort of watch-
coat like a bed-gown, with very wide sleeves.

" Take a quantity of linseed oil, and boil it gently
till one half is diminished, to which put a small
quantity of litharge of gold, and when it is well
incorporated with the oil, lay it on with a brush
upon the watch-coat, so that it shall be every
where equally wet.

" I suppose the watch-coat, hung in a garret, or
other covered place, and so suspended by crooked
pins and packthreads in the extremities of the
sleeves and edges of the collar, that one part shall
not touch another. In a short time, if the wea-
ther is good, it will be dry; when a second mix-
ture of the same kind should be laid on with a
brush

62 REFLECTIONS on the WAR

A R M S.

THEIR arms, the best that could be made, should be short fusils and some rifles, with bayonets in the form of a dirk, to serve for a knife; with powder horns and shot pouches, small hatchets and leathern bottles for water.

brush as before. When the second coat of painting is dry, the grease will not come off, and the furtout is an effectual preservative from rain; it is very light to carry, and being pretty full on the back, will not only keep the man dry, but also his pack and ammunition.

The sleeves are left long and wide, to receive the butt-end of a firelock (secured) and to cover it below the lock. The coat is double breasted to be lapped over, according to which side the rain drives. A man will be kept dry by one of these furtouts as far as the knees. If, from the vicinity of the enemy, it is improper to make fires at night, he may place his pack on a stone, and, sitting upon it, change his shoes and leggins, and, if he pleases, wrap his blanket round his legs and feet, then drawing the watch-coat close to his body, it will keep him warm, as no air can pass through it, and, leaning against the trunk of a tree, he may pass a tolerable night, both warm and dry.

It would be of service to have a small piece of the same oiled linen to put under the hat or cap to carry the rain down to the watchcoat or furtout, otherwise whatever wet soaks through the hat or cap, will run down the neck, and thereby, in some measure, defeat the design of the watchcoat.

Perhaps it might be useful to mix some dark or greenish colour with the oil of the second coating, to make the watch-coat less remarkable in the woods.

EXER-

could be made, rifles, with bay-
 net for a knife;
 pouches, small
 water.

second coat of paint-
 came off, and the
 live from rain; it is
 pretty full on the
 man dry, but also

and wide, to receive
 (red) and to cover
 it is double breasted
 to which side the
 kept dry by one of
 nees. If, from the
 proper to make fires
 on a stone, and,
 and leggias, and,
 round his legs and
 ch-coat close to his
 as no air can pass
 the trunk of a
 e night, both warm

have a small piece of
 under the hat or cap
 watchcoat or furtout,
 through the hat or
 tick, and thereby, in
 design of the watch-

to mix some dark or
 of the second coat,
 remarkable in the

EXER-

EXERCISES.

THE soldiers being raised, clothed, and form-
 ed into companies under proper officers, must,
 before they are armed, be taught to keep them-
 selves clean, and to dress in a soldier-like manner.
 This will raise in them a becoming spirit, give
 them a favourable opinion of their profession, and
 preserve their health. The first thing they are to
 learn is to Walk well, afterwards to Run; and,
 in order to excite emulation, small premiums
 might from time to time be given to those who
 distinguish themselves. They must then run in
 ranks, with open files, and wheel in that order,
 at first slowly, and by degrees increase their speed:
 this evolution is difficult, but of the utmost con-
 sequence to fall unexpectedly upon the flank of
 the enemy. They are to disperse and rally at
 given signals; and particular colours should be
 given to each company, for them to rally by;
 the men must be used to leap † over logs and
 ditches, and to carry burthens proportioned to
 their strength.

WHAT.

† Vegetius gives an account of many similar ex-
 ercises, which the Romans found necessary to esta-
 blish among their military. *Miles sylvam cudebat,
 molivis temporibus gatabat, ad palum dimicabat, sal-
 tabat, currebat. Exempla hujus exercitationis crebra
 sunt apud Livium. Sic ille de Scipione Africano,
 3 decad. lib. VI. "Primo die legiones in armis IV.
 "millium spatio decurrerunt. Secundo die arma
 "currere, et tergere ante tentoria jussit. Tertio die
 "sudibus*

64 REFLECTIONS on the WAR

WHEN the young soldiers are perfect in their exercises, they may receive their arms, with which they are to perform the former evolutions in all sorts of grounds. They will next be taught to handle their arms with dexterity; and, without losing time upon trifles, to load and fire very quick, standing, kneeling, or lying on the ground. They are to fire at a mark without a rest, and not suffered to be too long in taking aim. Hunting and small premiums will soon make them expert marksmen.

THEY ought to learn to swim, pushing at the same time their cloaths, arms, and ammunition before them, on a small raft; and to make use of snow shoes. They must then be set to work, and be taught to throw up an intrenchment, open a trench, make fascines, clays and gabions; likewise to fall trees, square logs, saw planks, make canoes, carts, ploughs, hand and wheel barrows, shingles and clap-boards, casks, batteaus and bridges, and to build log houses, ovens, &c.

By example and practice, the most ingenious among them will soon become tolerable good carpenters, joiners, wheelwrights, coopers, armourers, smiths, masons, brickmakers, saddlers, tailors, butchers, bakers, shoemakers, curriers, &c.

" sudibus inter se in modum iusta pugna concurrerent, præcipitque - missilibus jaculati sunt. " Quarto die quies data. Quinto iterum in armis decursum est. — Quibus porro modis obviam eatur elephantis. Veget. lib. III. cap. 24.

LIGHT

perfect in their
ir arms, with
former evolutions
next be taught
ty; and, with-
ad and fire very
on the ground.
out a rest, and
ing aim. Hunt-
make them ex-

, pushing at the
and ammunition
d to make use of
fet to work, and
achment, open a
d gabions; like-
w planks, make
wheel barrows,
, battens and
ovens, &c.
r most ingenious
lerable good car-
, coopers, ar-
makers, saddlers,
makers, carriers,

as pugna concur-
is jaculati sunt.
to iterum in armis
modis obviam eatur
4.

LIGHT

LIGHT HORSE and DOGS.

I SAID that, to compleat this establishment, they should have two troops of light horse, supposed of 50 men each, officers included. The men are to perform the same exercises as the foot, and afterwards be taught to ride, and particularly to be very alert at mounting and dismounting with their arms in their hands, to gallop through the woods up and down hills, and leap over logs and ditches.

THE horses ought to be bought up on the frontiers, where they are bred and used to feed in the woods, and are strong and hardy. They are to be thoroughly broke, made to stand fire, to swim over rivers, &c. their saddles and accoutrements very simple, strong and light. The number of horses might be reduced to one half, in time of peace, tho' they would be of little expence, as they might be bred and maintained without charge in the military settlement. This corps should be equipped as the foot, having only a short rifle in lieu of a fusil, and a battle ax with a long handle. the only sort of arms they should make use of in the charge.

EVERY light horse man ought to be provided with a Blood-hound, which would be useful to find out the enemies ambushes, and to follow their tracks; they would seize the naked savages, or at least give time to the horse men to come up with them; they would add to the safety of the camp at night by discovering any attempt to surprize it.

A R T I-

ARTIFICERS.

THE company of artificers should be composed of the most useful tradesmen, and ought to be maintained at all times for the instruction of the soldiers, the use of the settlement, or the service of the army, during the campaign. It will now be time to draw forth this military colony and remove them to the ground laid out for that use in the woods, and at a good distance from the inhabitants. The nature of this settlement will hereafter be more particularly described.

NECESSITY creating industry, our young soldiers will soon provide themselves with the most useful articles, and in a couple of years be able to raise provisions for themselves.

WHILE the greatest part would be employed in clearing the ground; fencing, ploughing, sowing, planting, building and making utensils and household furniture, others might hunt with their officers, and remain a fortnight or a month out of the camp, without other provisions than a little flour, and what they could procure by hunting and fishing: then to be relieved, and the whole trained up in that way.

THE military exercises must still be kept up and practised, and great care taken to inculcate and preserve purity of manners, obedience, order and decency among the men, which will be found much easier in the woods than in the neighbourhood of towns.

IN order to make this military establishment more generally useful, I would propose that the soldiers should only receive a very small part of their

the WAR.

R. S.

ould be compos-
and ought to be
struction of the
t, or the service
n. It will now
y colony and re-
t for that use in
s from the in-
settlement will
cribed.

our young fol-
s with the most
years be able to

ould be employed
ploughing, sow-
ing utensils and
hunt with their
s or a month out
rovisions than a
procure by hun-
relieved, and the

still be kept up
ken to inculcate
obedience, order
which will be
ods than in the

ary establishment
propose that the
ery small part of
their

With the Savages of NORTH-AMERICA. 67
their pay; leaving the remainder in the military
chest.

THEIR accounts should be settled every year,
and when their services should intitle them to their
discharge, I could wish that each of them had
200 acres of land given him, in a district appro-
priated for that purpose; and receiving then the
whole ballance of pay due to them, they would
be enabled to compleat their settlement. This
institution appears not only practicable, but easy,
if attended to with patience, assiduity and firm-
ness. The plan I would propose is as follows.

Method of forming such SETTLEMENTS upon
the Frontiers, as might support themselves dur-
ing an INDIAN WAR.

LET us suppose a settlement to be formed for
one hundred families, composed of five persons
each, upon an average.

LAY out upon a river, or creek, if it can be
found conveniently, a SQUARE of one thousand
seven hundred and sixty yards, or a mile for each
side.

THAT Square will contain	- -	640 acres
Allowing for streets and public uses	40	} 640 acres
To half an acre for every house	- 50	
To one hundred lots at five and half	- 550	
acres	- - - - -	

THE four sides of the square measure 7040
yards, which gives to each house about 70 yards
front to stockade, and the ground allowed for
building will be 210 feet front, and about 100
feet deep.

AN acre of ground will produce at least 30
bushels of Indian corn. Therefore, two acres are
sufficient

68 REFLECTIONS on the WAR

sufficient to supply five persons, at the rate of twelve bushels each person. Two other acres will be a pasture for cows and sheep, another acre for hay, to be sown with red clover. The remaining half acre may be laid out for a garden.

ROUND the town are the commons, of three miles square, containing, exclusive of the lots above-mentioned, 5120 acres. On three sides of the town, five other Squares will be laid out of three square miles, containing 5760 acres each, one of which is reserved for wood for the use of the Settlement; the other four to be divided into 25 out-lots or plantations, of about 230 acres each, so that in the four Squares there will be one hundred such plantations, for the 100 families.

ANOTHER township may be laid out joining this, upon the same plan, and as many more as you please upon the same line, without losing any ground.

This following is a rough sketch of the whole.

Township A.		Township B.		Township C.		Township D.	
1	5700 acres wood for the Town A	1	Commons A	3	Commons C	4	Commons D
1	Commons A	2	Commons B	3	Commons C	4	Commons D
2	Commons B	2	Wood for the Town B	3	Commons C	4	Commons D
2	Wood for the Town B	3	Wood for the Town C	4	Commons D	4	Wood for the Town D
3	Wood for the Town C	4	Commons D	4	Wood for the Town D		
4	Commons D						
4	Wood for the Town D						

the WAR

at the rate of
two other acres
p, another acre
over. The re-
for a garden.
mons, of three
re of the lots a-
On three sides of
be laid out of
60 acres each,
for the use of
be divided into
out 230 acres
rs there will be
the 100 fami-

aid out joining
many more as
hout losing any

Thus

70 REFLECTIONS on the WAR

THUS the town, A, has its commons, its woodland, and its 4 squares marked No. 1. each containing 25 plantations of 250 acres, as proposed above. In like manner, the other towns, B, C, D, have their appurtenances respectively marked.

LET us now suppose this plan accomplished, and such corps as these fully settled, trained and disciplined, in the manner above-mentioned; I would ask whether any officer, entrusted with an expedition against the savages, would not chuse to have them in his army? I may safely answer for all those who have been employed in that service, that they would prefer them to double the number of the best European troops. And when they had served the time limited, namely from their 15th to their 35th year, what vast satisfaction would it be to pay over to them their share of savings from the public chest; and, as a reward of their faithful toils, to vest them and their heirs with their several plantations, which they would now be enabled to cultivate as their own? This prospect would engage many people to enter their sons, in such corps; and these veterans, when thus discharged, would not only be the means of forming and animating others by their example, but in case of a war would still bravely maintain the property they had so honourably acquired, and be the greatest security of the frontier where they are settled.

commons, its
ed No. 1. each
acres, as pro-
e other towns,
ces respectively

accomplished,
ed, trained and
e-mentioned; I
ntrusted with an
ould not chuse
ay safely answer
oyed in that ser-
n to double the
ops. And when
d, namely from
at vast satisfaci-
em their share of
and, as a reward
m and their heirs
hich they would
their own? This
ple to enter their
e veterans, when
be the means of
by their example,
bravely maintain
ably acquired, and
rontier where they

PRE-

With the Savages of NORTH-AMERICA. 71

PREPARATIONS FOR AN EXPEDITION IN THE WOODS AGAINST SAVAGES.

It is not practicable to employ large bodies of troops against Indians; the convoys necessary for their support would be too cumbersome, and could neither be moved with ease, nor protected. It would be better to fit out several small expeditions, than one too unwieldy: I will therefore suppose that a corps intended to act offensively shall not exceed the following proportions.

Two regiments of foot	- - - -	900
One battalion of hunters	- - - -	500
Two troops of light horse	- - - -	100
One company of artificers	- - - -	20
Drivers and necessary followers	- - - -	280

In all 1800

THE first article to provide is the provisions, and next the carriages.

THE daily ration of a soldier in the woods should consist of one pound and a half of meat (which requires no carriage) and one pound of flour, with a gill of salt per week.

UPON that allowance }
1800 men will require for six } 327,600 lb. Flour.
months or 182 days - - -

ALLOWING one fourth for
accident - - - - - 81,900

For six months 409,500 lb. Flour.

MEAT

72 REFLECTIONS on the WAR

MEAT for the same time
with a fourth part more for
accidents, or 2048 beeves } 614,400 lb. Meat.
at 300 lb. each

Salt for 26 weeks - - - 182 Bushels.

THE above quantity would serve the whole
campaign, but one half would be sufficient to
penetrate from the last depôt into the heart of
the enemy's country: therefore we shall compute
the carriages for this last quantity only.

EVERY horse carries about 150 lb. neat weight,
therefore, to carry flour for three months or
204,750 lb. will require 1365 horses.

Horses for flour	- - - -	1365
For 91 bushels of salt	- - - -	40
Ammunition	- - - -	50
Tents	- - - -	50
Tools	- - - -	50
Hospital	- - - -	20
Officers baggage and staff	- - - -	150

1731

To reduce this exorbitant number of horses,
and the great expence attending it, I would pro-
pose, for such parts of the country as would admit
of it, to make use of carts, drawn each by four
oxen, and carrying about 1300 lb or six barrels
of flour. The above quantity of 204,750 lb. will
then be carried by 160 carts drawn by 640 oxen.

Spare oxen with the army - - - 384

The number of oxen wanted - - - 1024

THIS

the WAR:

4,400 lb. Meat.

182 Bushels.
erve the whole
be sufficient to
into the heart of
we shall compute
only.
lb. neat weight,
three months or
oxen.

-	-	1365
-	-	40
-	-	50
-	-	50
-	-	50
-	-	20
-	-	150
		1731

umber of horses,
it, I would pro-
y as would admit
wn each by four
lb or six barrels
f 204,750 lb. will
wn by 640 oxen
384
1024

THIS

With the Savages of NORTH-AMERICA. 73

THIS method would not be as expeditious as the carriage by horses, and would require more time and attention in cutting the road, and bridging the swampy places, &c. but, on the other hand, what an expence would be saved! and by killing the oxen in proportion as the flour is used, and abandoning the carts, the convoy is daily reduced, and the grass near the encampment will not be so soon consumed, which is not the case with horses, which must equally be fed though unloaded. This is an object of consequence, particularly near the end of the campaign, when the scarcity of fodder obliges to move the camps every day, and to place them in low and disadvantageous grounds.

I WOULD therefore incline for the use of carts, and they could be made before hand by the hunters and their artificers.

THE oxen should be bought in the provinces where the farmers make use of them in their works. One or two soldiers would drive the cart and take charge of the four oxen.

THERE are few rivers in North-America deep in summer, and which these carts with high and broad wheels, could not ford; but if the contrary should happen, the carts, provisions and baggage, may be rafted over, or a bridge built. In a country full of timber, and with troops accustomed to work, no river will stop an army for a long time.

By the above method, 3 or 400 horses would be sufficient to carry the baggage, ammunition, tents, tools, &c.

E X P L A N A -

74 REFLECTIONS on the WAR

EXPLANATION OF THE FOUR PLANS,
PLATE II.

Representing the different positions of our army
in the woods.

ENCAMPMENT.

THE camp (Fig. 1) forms a parallelogram, of one thousand by six hundred feet. Eight hundred men of the regular troops (1) encamp on the four sides, which gives twenty-four feet to each tent, containing six men. The light-horse (3) encamp within the parallelogram. The reserve (7) in the center.

THE provisions, ammunition, tools and stores (8) and the cattle (9) are placed between the two troops of light horse and the reserve. The hunters (2) encamp on the outside diagonally at the four angles, being covered by redoubts (5) formed with kegs and bags of flour or fascines. Besides these four redoubts, another is placed at the front, one to the rear, and two before each of the long faces of the camp, making in all ten advanced guards of 22 men each, and 7 centries, covered if possible by breast works of fascines or provisions. Before the army lay down their arms, the ground is to be reconnoitred, and the guards posted, who will immediately open a communication from one to the other, to relieve the centries, and facilitate the passage of sounds.

THE centries upon the ammunition, provisions, head quarters, and all others in the inside of

the

the WAR

FOUR PLANS,

ns of our army

N T.

parallelogram,
et. Eight hun-
encamp on the
ur feet to each
light-horse (3)
n. The reserve

tools and stores
between the two
ve. The hunt-
diagonally at the
doubts (5) form-
or fascines. Be-
is placed to the
o before each of
ing in all ten ad-
and 7, contains,
ks of fascines or
down their arms,
, and the guards
pen a communi-
relieve the cen-
rounds. If the
munition, provis-
rs in the inside of

the

With the Savages of NORTH-AMERICA. 75

the camp are furnished from the reserve. The officers, except the staff and commanders of corps, encamp on the line with their men.

THE fires are made between the guards and camp, and put out in case of an attack in the night.

LINE of MARCH, Plate II. Fig. II.

PART of the hunters (2) in three divisions detaching small parties (5, 6) to their front and to their right and left, to search the woods and discover the enemy.

THE artificers and axe-men (4) to cut a road for the convoy, and two paths on the right and left for the troops.

ONE hundred and fifty of the regular troops (1) in two files, who are to form the front of the square; these march in the center road.

TWO hundred and fifty regulars (1) in one file by the right hand path; and 50 (1) by the left hand path, are to form the long faces.

THESE are followed by 150 regulars (1) in two files, who are to form the rear of the square.

THE reserve (7) composed of 100 regulars in two files.

THE rest of the hunters (2) in two files.

THE light horse (3.)

THE rear guard (5) composed of hunters, follows the convoy at some distance and closes the march. The scouting parties (6) who flank the line of march, are taken from the hunters and light horse, and posted as in plan (Fig. 2) some orderly light horsemen, attend the General and field officers who command the grand divisions,

76 REFLECTIONS on the WAR

to carry their orders. Two guards of light horse take charge of the cattle (9)

THE convoy (8) proceeds in the following order.

THE tools and ammunition following the front column.

THE baggage.

THE cattle.

THE provisions.

THE whole divided into Brigades, and the horses two a breast.

DEFILES.

In case of a defile, the whole halt until the ground is reconnoitred, and the hunters have taken possession of the heights. The center column then enters into the defile, followed by the right face; after them the convoy; then the left and rear face, with the reserve, the light horse, and the rear guard.

THE whole to form again as soon as the ground permits.

DISPOSITION TO RECEIVE THE ENEMY, Fig. (3)

THE whole halt to form the square or parallelogram, which is done thus. The two first men of the center column stand fast at two yards distance. The two men following them, step forward and post themselves at two yards on the right and left. The others come to the front in the same manner, till the two files have formed a rank, which is the front of the square.

THE

the WAR
ds of light horse
in the following
llowing the front

igades, and the

le halt until the
hunters have ta-
he center column
owed by the right
then the left and
light horse, and

as soon as the

THE ENEMY,

he square or pa-
na. The two first
fast at two yards
owing them, step
two yards on the
re to the front in
iles have formed a
square.

THE

With the Savages of NORTH-AMERICA. 77

THE rear face is formed by the two file-leaders turning to the center road, where having placed themselves at two yards distance, they face outwards, and are followed by their files, each man posting himself on their right or left, and facing towards the enemy the moment he comes to his post.

As soon as the front and rear are extended and formed, the two long faces, who have in the mean time faced outwards, join now the extremities of the two fronts, and close the square †.

TO REDUCE THE SQUARE.

THE right and left of the front, face to the center, where the two center men stand fast. Upon the word "march" these step forward and are replaced by the two next, who follow them, and so on; by which means, that front becomes again a column. The rear goes to the right about, and each of the two center men leads again to the side paths followed by the rest.

WHILE the troops form, the light horse and each division of the convey take the ground assigned to them within the square, as if they were to encamp; and the horses being unloaded, two parallel lines will be formed, with the bags and kegs of provisions, to cover the wounded and the men unfit for action. The hunters take post on the most advantageous ground on the out side, and skirmish with the enemy, till the square is formed; when, upon receiving their orders, they retire within the square, where they take their post as in Fig. (3).

† These evolutions must be performed with celerity.

E

THE

78 REFLECTIONS on the WAR

THE small parties of rangers (5) who have flanked the line of march, remain on the outside, to keep on the enemy and observe their motions.

WHEN the firing begins the troops will have orders to fall on their knees, to be less exposed till it is thought proper to attack.

THE four faces, formed by the regular troops, are divided into platoons *chequered*. One half, composed of the best and most active soldiers, is called the first Firing, and the other half the second Firing.

THE eight platoons at the angles are of the second Firing, in order to preserve the form of the square during the attack.

IT is evident that, by this disposition, the convoy is well covered, and the light troops, destined for the charge, remain concealed; and as all unexpected events during an engagement are apt to strike terror, and create confusion, among the enemy, it is natural to expect that the savages will be greatly disconcerted at the sudden and unforeseen eruption, that will soon pour upon them from the inside of the square; and that, being vigorously attacked in front and flank at the same time, they will neither be able to resist, nor, when once broke, have time to rally, so as to make another stand. This may be effected in the following manner.

GENERAL ATTACK, Fig. IV.

THE Regulars (1) stand fast.

THE hunters (2) fall out, in four columns, thro' the intervals of the front and rear of the square, followed by the light horse (3) with their bloodhounds. The intervals of the two columns who

the WAR

(5) who have
on the outside,
their motions,
troops will have
to be less exposed

the regular troops,
urged. One half,
active soldiers, is
the other half the se-

les are of the fe-
the form of the

position, the con-
troops, destin-
ealed; and as all
engagement are not
usion, among the
that the savages
the sudden and un-
pour upon them
and that, being
flank at the same
ble to resist, nor,
to rally, so as to
be effected in the

CK, Fig. IV.

in four columns,
nt and rear of the
horse (3) with their
of the two columns
who

With the Savages of NORTH-AMERICA. 79

who attack in the front, and of those who attack in the rear, will be closed by the little parties of rangers (5) posted at the angles of the square, each attack forming in that manner, three sides of a parallelogram. In that order they run to the enemy (X) and having forced their way through their circle, fall upon their flanks; by wheeling to their right and left, and charging with impetuosity. The moment they take the enemy in flank, the First Firing of the regular troops march out briskly and attack the enemy in front. The platoons detached in that manner from the two short faces, proceed only about one hundred yards to their front, where they halt to cover the square, while the rest of the troops who have attacked pursue the enemy, till they are totally dispersed, not giving them time to recover themselves.

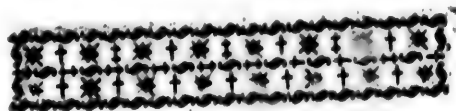
THE sick and wounded, unable to march or ride, are transported in litters made of flour bags, through which two long poles are passed, and kept asunder by two sticks, tied across beyond the head and feet to stretch the bag. Each litter is carried by two horses—

THESE remarks might have been extended to many other cases that may occur in the course of a campaign or of an engagement, but it is hoped this sketch will be sufficient to evince the necessity of some alteration in our ordinary method of proceeding in an Indian war.

E 2

APPEN-

[illegible]



APPENDIX I.
CONSTRUCTION
OF
FORTS
AGAINST INDIANS.

As we have not to guard here against cannon, the system of European fortification may be laid aside, as expensive, and not answering the purpose. Forts against Indians, being commonly remote from our settlements, require a great deal of room to lodge a sufficient quantity of stores and provisions, and at the same time ought to be defensible with one half of their compleat garrisons, in case of detachments or convoys.

I AM therefore of opinion that a square or pentagon, with a block-house of brick or stone * at every angle, joined by a wall flanked by the block-houses, would be the best defence against such enemies. A ditch from seven to eight feet deep might be added, with loop holes in the collars of the block-houses six feet from the ground, to defend the ditch.

ALONG the inside of the curtains the traders might build houses and stores, covered as well as the block-houses with tiles, or slate, to guard against fire arrows. There will remain a spacious area for free air and use, in which as well as in the ditch, gardens might be made and well dug.

THE powder magazines might be placed in the center of the area, keeping only a small quantity of cartridges in each block-house for present use.

THE garrisons of such forts would be free from surprises, even if they had no centres, for nothing can get at them, while the doors are well bolted and barred.

* Experience has demonstrated that fortifications made of wood decay very soon, and we on that account of considerable expense.

SOME

SOME REASONS FOR KEEPING POSSESSION
OF OUR LARGE FORTS IN THE IN-
DIAN COUNTRY.

As these forts have been one of the causes of the last war and are a great eye-sore to the savages, they have bent their chief efforts against them; and therefore, while thus employed, they have been less able to distress our settlements. Our forts keep the Indian towns at a great distance from us. Fort-Pitt has effectually driven them, beyond the Ohio, and made them remove their settlements at least 60 miles further westward. Was it not for these forts, they would settle close on our borders, and in time of war infest us every day in such numbers as would over-power the thin inhabitants scattered on our extensive frontier. The farmer unable to sow or reap would soon fall back on our chief towns, or quit the country for want of bread. In either case, what would be the fate of the large towns burthened with the whole country, and deprived of subsistence and of the materials of trade and export?

The destruction of these forts being, in time of war, the chief aim of the savages, they gather above them to distress the garrisons, and to attack the convoy; thereby giving us an opportunity to fight them in a body, and to strike a heavy blow, which otherwise they would never put in our power, as their advantage lies in surprises, which are best effected by small numbers. Experience has convinced them that it is not in their power to

break those shackles, and therefore it is not probable that they will continue a check upon them, and save the difficulty and expence of taking post again in their country. Our forts are likewise the proper places for trade, which being closely inspected, it will be easy for us to limit their supplies, to such commodities as they cannot turn against us, and to put a speedy stop to all just causes of complaints, by giving immediate redress.

A FEW forts, with strong garrisons, I should judge to be of more service than a greater number weakly guarded. In the last war we lost all our small posts; but our more considerable ones, Detroit and Fort-Pitt, resisted all the efforts of the savages, by the strength of their garrisons.

re it is not pro-
eck upon them,
e of taking post
are likewise the
eing closely in-
limit their sup-
cannot turn a-
stop to all just
immediate re-

risons, I should
a greater num-
war we lost all
onsiderable ones,
the efforts of the
garrisons.



APPENDIX II.

THE following Paper was written by an Officer well acquainted with the places he describes; and is thought worthy of a place here, as every thing is material which can encrease our knowledge of the vast countries ceded to us, and of the various nations that inhabit them.

ACCOUNT of the FRENCH FORTS ceded to GREAT BRITAIN in LOUISIANA.

THE settlement of the Illinois being in 40 degrees of latitude, is 500 leagues from New-Orleans by water and 350 by land.

THE most proper time of the year for going there, is the beginning of February. The waters of the Mississippi are then high, and the country being overflowed, there is less to fear from the savages, who are hunting in that season.

THE

E 5

The

APPEN-

THE encampments should be on the left of the river, as the enemies are on the right, and cannot have a sufficient number of crafts to cross if their party is large.

THEY generally attack at day-break, or at the time of embarking.

THE inhabitants might bring provisions half way, if they were allowed good pay.

THE Delawares and Shawanese lie near Fort Du Quesne, † which is about 500 leagues from the Illinois. The Wiandots and Ottawas, (who are at the Detroit) are about 250 leagues from the Illinois by land. And the Miami about 200 by land.

NEVERTHELESS as intelligence is carried very fast by the Savages, and as all the nations with whom we are at war, can come by the Ohio, ‡ we must be vigilant to prevent a surprise.

† So the French formerly called what is now Fort Pitt.

‡ Part of the navigation of the Ohio, from Fort-Pitt is described as follows, viz.

That the difficult part of the river is from Fort-Pitt about 50 or 60 miles downwards. There are 32 islands between Fort-Pitt and the lower Shawanese town on Scioto; and none of them difficult to pass in the night, but one at the mouth of Muskingum, obstructed by a number of trees lying in the channel. From the lower Shawanese Town to the falls, there are but 8 or 9 islands. At the falls, the river is very broad, with only one passage on the east side, in which there is water enough at all seasons of the year to pass without difficulty. Below the falls, the navigation is every way clear, down to the Mississippi.

THE

APPENDIX II. 87

THE mouth of the Ohio, in the Mississippi, is 35 leagues from the Illinois.

THIRTEEN leagues from the Mississippi, on the left of the Ohio, is Fort Massiac, or Assumption, built in 1757, a little below the mouth of the river Cherokee †. It is only a stockade, with four bastions and eight pieces of cannon. It may contain 100 men. In four days one may go by land, from this fort to the Illinois.

It is of consequence for the English to preserve it, as it secures the communication between the Illinois and Fort-Pitt.

FORT Vincennes, which is the last post belonging to Louisiana, is upon the river Ouabache ‡, 60 leagues from its conflux with the Ohio. It is a small stockade fort, in which there may be about 20 soldiers. There are also a few inhabitants. The soil is extremely fertile, and produces plenty of corn and tobacco.

THE distance from this fort to the Illinois, is 155 leagues by water. And it may be travelled by land in six days.

THE nation of savages living at this post is called Pianquicha. It can furnish 60 warriors.

ALTHO' we do not occupy Fort Vincennes at present, yet it would be of the utmost consequence.

† River Cherokee falls into the Ohio about 800 miles below Fort-Pitt. This river is in general wide and shoal up to the fourth mountain, passable only with bark canoes, after which it grows very small.

‡ Ouabache or Wabash empties itself into the Ohio about 60 miles above the Cherokee river, on the opposite or west side.

for

THE

for us to settle it, as there is a communication from it with Canada, by going up the Ouabache.

From this post to the Ouachtanons is 60 leagues, and from thence to the Miamis (still going up the Ouabache) is 60 leagues further; then there is a portage of six leagues to the river Miamis, and you go down that river 24 leagues to Lake Erie.

MR. DAUBRY went by that rout in 1759 from the Illinois to Venango, with above 400 men, and two hundred thousand weight of flour.

By the above paper the rout is given up the Mississippi, part of the Ohio, and up the Ouabache to Fort Vincennes, and likewise to the Illinois. Again from Vincennes and the Ouachtanons by water, on the westerly communication to the Miamis portage, then by water down that river by the easterly rout into the Lake Erie, proceeding as far as Presqu' Isle, then by the 15 m. portage into Buffalo or Beef river, lately called French creek, then down the same to Venango on the Ohio. In order therefore, to carry this rout still further, we shall continue it from Venango to the mouth of Juniata in Susquehanna, which brings it within the settled parts of Pennsylvania, viz.

From Venango to Licking creek, 10 miles. To Toby's creek, 13. To a small creek, 1. To the parting of the road, 5. To a large run, 3. To Leycaumeyhoning, 9. To Pine creek, 7. To Chuckcaughting, 8. To Weeling creek, 4. To the crossing of ditto, 4. To a miry swamp, 8. To the head of Susquehanna, 10. To Meytauning creek, 18. To Clear Field creek, 6. To the top of Allegheny, 1. To the other side, ditto, 6. To Beaver dams, 5. To Franks Town, 5. To the Canoe place, 6. To the mouth of Juniata, 149. Total 239 miles.

THIRTY-

communication
up the Ouabache.

chthonians is 60
Miami (still go-
s further; then
the river Mia-
r 24 leagues to

ut in 1759 from
above 400 men,
of flour.

given up the Mis-
the Ouabache to
the Illinois. Again
by water, on the
this portage, then
sterly rout into the
u' Ide, then by the
river, lately called
to Venango on the
this rout still fur-
ango to the mouth
ch brings it within
12.

12. 10 miles. To
k, 1. To the part-
3. To Leycaumey-
Chuckcaughting, 8
rodding of ditto. 4.
nd of Sufquehanna.
o Clear Field creek.
To the other side,
Franks Town, 5.
mouth of Juniatta,

THIRTY-

APPENDIX II. 89

THIRTY-FIVE leagues from the mouth of the Ohio, in going up the Mississippi, on the right, is the river Kaskaskias. Two leagues up this river, on the left, is the settlement of the Kaskaskias, which is the most considerable of the Illinois.

THERE is a fort built upon the height on the other side of the river, over against Kaskaskias; which, as the river is narrow, commands and protects the town.

I DON'T know how many guns there may be, nor how many men it may contain. There may be about 400 inhabitants.

THE Illinois Indians, called Kaskaskias, are settled half a league from the town; and are able to turn out 100 warriors. They are very lazy and great drunkards.

SIX leagues from Kaskaskias, on the bank of the Mississippi, is Fort Chartres, built of stone, and can contain 300 soldiers. There may be 20 cannon at most, and about 100 inhabitants round Chartres.

THE Illinois Indians at that place, who are called Metchis, can furnish 40 warriors.

BETWEEN the Kaskaskias, and Fort Chartres, is a small village, called *La prairie du Rocher* (the Rock Meadow) containing about 50 white inhabitants; but there is neither fort nor savages.

NEAR Fort Chartres is a little village, in which is about a score of inhabitants. Here are neither savages nor fort.

FIFTEEN leagues from Fort Chartres, going up the Mississippi, is the village of the Casquiars. There is a small stockade fort; I don't know if there is any cannon. There may be about 100 inhabitants.

THE

APPENDIX II.

THE Illinois Indians living near this village are called Casquiars, and can turn out 60 warriors.

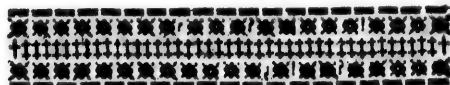
I compute there are about 300 Negroes at the Illinois.

THE country of the Illinois is fertile, producing good wheat and corn. All kinds of European fruits succeed there surprizingly well, and they have wild grapes with which they make tolerable wine. Their beer is pretty good.

THERE are mines of lead, and some salt. They make sugar of maple, and there are stone quarries.

APPEN.

village are
 warriors.
 Negroes at
 producing
 of European
 and they
 ke tolerable
 some salt.
 re are stone



APPENDIX III.

ROUT from PHILADELPHIA to FORT-PITT.

	Miles	Qrs.	Per.
to Lancaster	66	0	38
to Carlisle	55	0	00
to Shippensburg	22	0	00
to Fort Loudoun	24	3	00
to Fort Littleton	17	3	00
to the crossing of the Juniata	18	3	00
to Fort Bedford	14	3	00
to the crossing of Stony creek	29	0	39
to Fort Ligonier	20	1	43
to Fort Pitt	50	0	00
	324	2	40

FROM PHILADELPHIA

APPEN-

APPEN-

APPENDIX IV.

NUMBER of INDIAN TOWNS, situated on and near the Ohio River, and its branches, with their distances from Fort-Pitt, and the distances of the principal branches from each other at their conflux with the Ohio.

	Distance from one another	Distance from Fort-Pitt.
	Miles	Miles
FIRST ROUT about N. N. W.		
From Fort Pitt to Kuskuskies Town on Big Beaver-Creek		45
up the east branch of Beaver Creek to Sham-ingo	15	60
up ditto to Pematuning	12	72
to Mohoning on the West branch of Beaver Creek	32	104
up the branch to Salt Lick	10	114
to Cayahoga River	32	146
to Ottawas town on Cayahoga	10	156
		SECOND

APPENDIX IV. 93

		Distance from one another.	Distance from Fort-Pitt.
		Miles	Miles
From Fort Pitt	SECOND ROUT W.N.W.		
	to the mouth of Big Beaver-Creek		25
	to Tuscarawas	91	110
	to Mohickon John's Town	50	166
	to Junundat or Wyandot town	46	212
	to Fort Sandusky	4	216
	to Junquein Jundeh	24	240

THIRD ROUT about W. S. W.

		Distance from one another.	Distance from Fort-Pitt.
		Miles	Miles
From Fort Pitt	to the Forks of the Muskingam		128
	to Buller's Town on Muskingam	6	134
	to Waukatamike	10	144
	to King Beaver's Town on the heads of Hochocking	27	171
	to the lower Shawanese Town on Sioto river	40	211
	to the Salt Lick town on the heads of Sioto	25	236
	to the Miamis fort	190	426

FOURTH

K IV.

situated on and
branches, with
d the distances
each other at

Distance
n one
other

Miles

45

60

72

104

114

146

156

SECOND

FOURTH ROUT down the
Ohio; general course about
S. W.

	Distance from one another	Distance from Fort-Pitt.
	Miles	Miles
to the mouth of Big Beaver Creek		27
to the mouth of Little Beaver Creek	12	39
to the mouth of Yellow Creek	10	49
to the two Creeks	18	67
to Weeling	6	73
to Pipe Hill	12	85
to the long Reach	30	115
to the foot of the Reach	18	133
to the mouth of Musk- ingam river	30	163
to the little Canhawa river	12	175
to the mouth of Hock- hocking river	22	188
to the mouth of Lepore's creek	40	228
to Kiskeminetas	33	261
to the mouth of big Can- hawa or new river	8	269
to the mouth of big Sandy creek	40	309
to the mouth of Sioto river	40	349
to the mouth of big Salt Lick river	30	379
to the Island	20	399

By water from Fort Pitt

APPENDIX IV. 95

	Distance from Fort-Pitt.	Miles	Distance from one another	Distance from Fort-Pitt.
By water from Fort-Pitt.	to the mouth of Little Mineamie or Miammee † river			454
	to big Miammee or Rocky river	30		484
	to the Big Bones ‡	20		504
	to Kentucky River	55		559
	to the Falls of the Ohio	50		609
	to the Wabash, or Oua-			
	backe	131		740
	to Cherokee River	60		800
	to the Mississippi	40		840

N. B. The places mentioned in the first three Routes are delineated in the foregoing map, by an officer who, besides actual knowledge of most of them, and has long served against the Indians. The fourth Route down the Ohio was given by an Indian trader, who has often passed from Fort-Pitt to the Falls; and the distances he gives of the mouths of the several rivers that fall into the Ohio may be pretty certainly depended on. Our maps hitherto published are very erroneous in placing some of these rivers.

† These rivers, called Little and Great Mineamie or Miammee, fall into the Ohio between Soto and the Ounabache, and are different from the Miami river, which runs into the west end of Lake Erie, below the Miami fort.

‡ So called, from Elephant's bones said to be found there.

APPENDIX

APPENDIX V.

NAMES of different INDIAN NATIONS in NORTH-AMERICA, with the Numbers of their Fighting Men; referred to in the Note, page 48.

THE following list was drawn up by a French trader, a person of considerable note, who has resided many years among the Indians, and still continues at Detroit, having taken the oath of allegiance to the King of Great Britain. His account may be depended on, so far as matters of this kind can be brought near the truth; a great part of it being delivered from his own personal knowledge.

	Warriors
Conswaghrunas, near the falls of St. Louis	200
Aberaquis,	350
Michmacs,	700
• Amalistas,	550
• Chelas,	130
Nipissins,	400
Algonquins,	300
Les Tetes de Boule, or Round Heads, near the above	2500
	Six

XXXXXXXXXX
XXXXXXXXXX

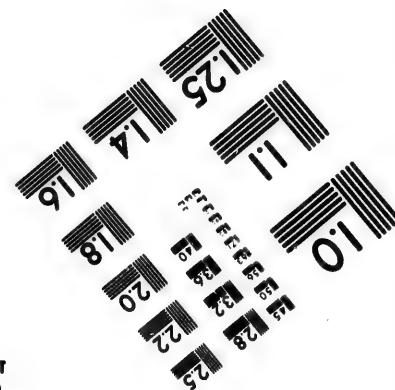
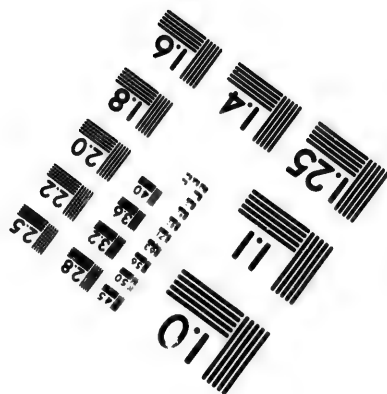
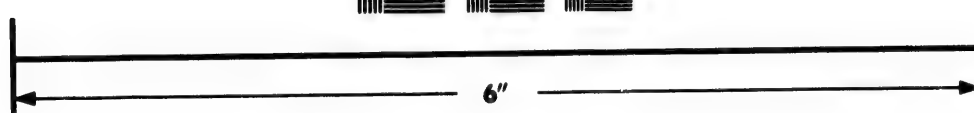
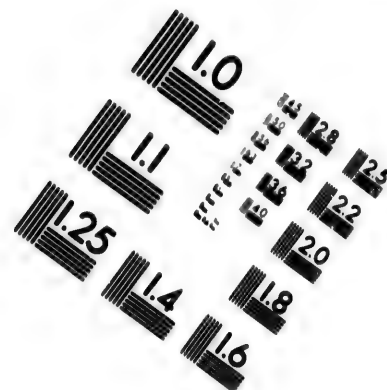
X V.

NATIONS in
Numbers of
in the Note,

drawn up by a
of considerable
any years among
Detroit, having
e King of Great
depended on, fo
e brought near
g delivered from

Warriors	
St. Louis	300
	350
	700
dians	550
	130
the heads of	400
river	300
Hende, near	2500
	Six





Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1985



APPENDIX V. 97

Six Nations, on the frontiers of New-York,	
&c.	1550
Wiandots, near lake Erie	300
Chipwas, } near the Lakes Superior and	5000
Ottawas, } Michigan	900
Messeagues, or River Indians, being wan-	
dering tribes, on the lakes Huron and Su-	
perior,	2000
Powtewatamis, near S. Joseph's and Detroit	350
Les Puans, } near Puans	700
Folleavoine, or Wild-Oat Indians } bay	350
* Mehecouakis, }	250
Sakis, } South of Puans bay	400
Mascoutens, }	500
Ouisconsin, on a river of that name, fall-	
ing into Mississippi on the east-side	550
Christinaux, }	
Astinaboes, or } far north, near the lakes	3000
Astinipouals } of the same name	1500
Blancs † Barbus, or White Indians with	
Beards	1500
Sioux, of the meadows } towards the heads	2500
Sioux, of the woods } of Mississippi	1800
Missouri, on the river of that name	3000
* Grandes Eaux	1000
Osages,	600
Canes,	1600
Panis blancs, } south of Missouri	2000
Panis piques, }	1700
Padoucas, }	500
Ajoues, north of the same	1100
Arkansas, on the river that bears their name,	
falling into Mississippi on the west side	2000

† They live to the north-west, and the French, when they first saw them, took them for Spaniards.

Alibamou,

Alibamons, a tribe of the Creeks	600
• Ouanakina	300
• Chiakanessou	350
• Machecous	400
• Coaitas	700
• Souikilas	200
Miamia, upon the river of that name, falling into Lake Erie	350
Delawares (1st Loops) on the Ohio	600
Shawaneis on Sioto	500
Kickapoos	300
Ouschtenons	400
Pearquichas	250
Kaskaskias, or Illinois in general, on the Illinois river	600
• Pianria	800
Catawbas, on the frontiers of North-Carolina	150
Cherokees, behind South-Carolina	2500
Chickasaws	750
Natchez	150
Chocaws	4500

56,500

THE above list consists chiefly of such Indians as the French were connected with in Canada and Louisiana. Wherever we knew the names by which the different nations are distinguished, by the English, we have inserted them. But the orthography is yet very unsettled, and the several nations marked with an asterisk are unknown to us, and therefore they are left as they stand in the original list.

So large a number of fighting men may startle us at first sight; but the account seems no where exaggerated, excepting only that the Catawba nation

next

V.
 - 600
 - 300
 the au- 350
 nem for 400
 reeks 700
 200
 e, falling 350
 - 600
 - 500
 - 300
 - 400
 - 250
 , on the 600
 - 800
 - Carolina 150
 - 2500
 - 750
 - 150
 - 4300
 56,500
 of such Indians
 in Canada and
 the names by
 distinguished, by
 them. But the
 and the several
 are unknown
 as they stand in
 men may startle
 seems no where
 the Catawba
 nation

APPENDIX V. 99

nation, is now almost extinct. In some nations which we are acquainted with, the account falls even short of their numbers; and some others do not appear to be mentioned at all, or at least not by any name known to us.

SUCH, for instance, are the Lower Creeks, of whom we have a list according to their towns. In this list their warriors or gunsmen are 1180, and their inhabitants about 6000. Thus a comparative judgment may be formed of the nations above-mentioned; the number of whose inhabitants will (in this proportion to their warriors, viz. 5 to 1) be about 283,000.

F I N I S.

